Lexicon

MC-12 Digital Controller

User Guide

A Harman International Company

IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

1. Read these instructions.
2. Keep these instructions.
3. Heed all warnings.
4. Follow all instructions.
5. Do not use this apparatus near water.
6. Clean only with a dry cloth.
7. Do not block any ventilation openings. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
8. Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or another apparatus (including amplifiers) that produces heat.
9. Do not defeat the safety purpose of the polarized or grounding-type plug. A polarized plug has two blades with one wider than the other. A grounding-type plug has two blades and a third grounding prong. The wide blade or the third prong are provided for your safety. If the provided plug does not fit into your outlet, consult an electrician for replacement of the obsolete outlet.
10. Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
11. Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
12. Use only with the cart, stand, tripod, bracket, or table specified by the manufacturer, or sold with the apparatus. When a cart is used, use caution when moving the cart/appartus combination to avoid injury from tip-over.

13. Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
14. Refer all servicing to qualified service personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in any way, such as when a power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.
    - Refer to the manufacturer's operating instructions for power requirements. Be advised that different operating voltages may require the use of different line cord and/or attachment plug.
    - Do not install the unit in an unventilated rack, or directly above heat-producing equipment such as power amplifiers. Observe the maximum ambient operating temperature listed in the product specification.
    - Never attach audio power amplifier outputs directly to any of the unit's connectors.

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and radiates radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on. The user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Re-orient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and the receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/television technician for help.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of fire or electric shock, do not expose this apparatus to rain or moisture. Do not place objects containing liquid, such as vases, on this apparatus.

This triangle, which appears on your component, alerts you to the presence of uninsulated, dangerous voltage inside the enclosure - voltage that may be sufficient to constitute a risk of shock.

CAUTION
RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK
DO NOT OPEN

This triangle, which appears on your component, alerts you to important operating and maintenance instructions in this accompanying literature.

lexicon

A Harman International Company

Lexicon Inc.
3 Oak Park
Bedford, MA 01730-1413 USA
Tel 781-280-0300
Fax 781-280-0490
www.harmanspecialtygroup.com

Customer Service
Telephone: 781-280-0300
Sales Fax: 781-280-0495
Service Fax: 781-280-0499

Part No. 070-14773 | Rev 4 | 05/05

DOCUMENTATION CONVENTIONS

This document contains general safety, installation and operation instructions for the MC-12 and MC-12 Balanced Digital Controllers. It is important to read this user guide before attempting to use the product. Pay particular attention to safety instructions.

The following symbols are used in the document:

Appears on the component to indicate the presence of uninsulated, dangerous voltage inside the enclosure – voltage that may be sufficient to constitute a risk of shock.

Appears on the component to indicate important operating and maintenance instructions in the accompanying literature.

WARNING Calls attention to a procedure, practice, condition or the like that, if not correctly performed or adhered to, could result in injury or death.

CAUTION! Calls attention to a procedure, practice, condition or the like that, if not correctly performed or adhered to, could result in damage or destruction to part or all of the product.

Note: Calls attention to information that is essential to highlight.

SETUP ▸ INPUTS ▸ DVD1 ▸ NAME ▸ EDIT INPUT NAME

Represents a menu path. The menu items in gray boxes must be selected with the remote control Menu ▸ arrow to access the menu or menu item in the black box. For example, the SETUP, INPUTS, and DVD1 menu items must be selected to open the DVD1 INPUT SETUP menu.

The DVD1 INPUT SETUP menu is used here as an example and will continue to be used as an example throughout this document. Whenever it appears, any other INPUT SETUP menu may be substituted. Likewise, whenever the DVD1 input appears as a step in a menu path, any other input may be substituted.

This document uses the term MC-12 to refer to both the MC-12 and MC-12 Balanced Digital Controllers unless otherwise specified.
This document uses the term DTS-(ES) to indicate that DTS-ES encoding may or may not be present in the input source.

Table of Contents

Documentation Conventions ii
Important Safety Instructions v
Wichtige Sicherheitshinweise v
Instrucciones De Seguridad Importantes vi
Instructions Importantes Relatives À La Sécurité vi
Importanti Norme Di Sicurezza vii
Instruções Importantes De Segurança vii
Vigtig Information Om Sikkerhed viii
Tärkeitä Turvallisuusohjeita viii
Viktig Informasjon Om Sikkerhet ix
Viktiga Säkerhetsföreskrifter ix
Unpacking and Inspection x
Auspacken und Überprüfung x
Desembalaje e Inspección x
Contenu de L'emballage et Inspection x
Disimballaggio ed Ispezione x
Retirando a Embalagem e Inspecionando x

Getting Started

About The MC-12 1-2
Highlights 1-4
Product Registration 1-5
Installation Considerations 1-5
Remote Control Battery Installation 1-6

Basic Operation

Front-Panel Overview 2-2
Rear-Panel Overview 2-6
Remote Control Overview 2-10
Operation Considerations 2-10
Main Menu 2-11
Menu Navigation 2-11
Menu Item Selection 2-11
Command Bank Activation 2-13
Command Matrix 2-14
About the Zones 2-19
Two-line Status 2-19
Status Menus 2-20
Status Menu Descriptions 2-21
Status Menu Parameter Descriptions 2-25
Status Menu Level Meters 2-26

Setup

Setup 3-2
Input Setup 3-4
Changing Input Names 3-5
Assigning Audio & Video Input Connectors 3-7
Selecting Preferred Listening Modes 3-12
Configuring Advanced Input Settings 3-15
INPUT SELECT Parameter Settings 3-17
ZONE2 & RECORD IN Parameter Settings 3-19
Speaker Setup 3-22
Setting Crossover Points 3-22
Calibrating Speaker Distances & Output Levels 3-33
Speaker Calibration Parameters 3-33
Automatic Calibration 3-35
Manual Calibration 3-52
Rear-Panel Configuration 3-59
Display Setup 3-61
On-Screen Display 3-63
Front-Panel Display 3-65
Volume-Control Setup 3-66
Trigger Setup 3-68
Lock Options 3-70
LIVE! Calibration 3-71

Audio Controls

Audio Controls 4-2

Mode Adjust

Mode Adjust 5-2
Listening Mode Activation 5-2
Preferred Listening Mode Selection Parameters 5-3
Mode Buttons 5-4
Mode Family Selection Buttons 5-4
Listening Mode Descriptions 5-5
Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions 5-37
Mode – Parameter Relationships 5-45

Troubleshooting & Maintenance

Troubleshooting 6-2
Routine Maintenance 6-3
Restoring Factory-default Settings 6-4

Appendix

Specifications A-2
Declaration of Conformity A-4
Menu Tree A-5
Installation Worksheet A-20

ENGLISH
IMPORTANT SAFETY INSTRUCTIONS

1 Save these instructions for later use.

2 Follow all instructions and warnings marked on the unit.

3 Follow all instructions and warnings marked on the unit.

4 Always use with the correct line voltage. Refer to the manufacturer's operating instructions for power requirements. Be advised that different operating voltages may require the use of a different line cord and/or attachment plug.

5 Do not install the unit in an unventilated rack, or directly above heat producing equipment such as power amplifiers. Observe the maximum ambient operating temperature listed in the product specification.

6 Slots and openings on the case are provided for ventilation; to ensure reliable operation and prevent it from overheating, these openings must not be blocked or covered. Never push objects of any kind through any of the ventilation slots. Never spill liquid of any kind on the unit.

7 Never attach audio power amplifier outputs directly to any of the unit's connectors.

8 To prevent shock or fire hazard, do not expose the unit to rain or moisture, or operate it where it will be exposed to water.

9 Do not attempt to operate the unit if it has been dropped, damaged, exposed to liquids, or if it exhibits a distinct change in performance indicating the need for service.

10 This unit should only be opened by qualified service personnel. Removing covers will expose you to hazardous voltages.

This triangle, which appears on your component, alerts you to the presence of uninsulated, dangerous voltage inside the enclosure...voltage that may be sufficient to constitute a risk of shock.

This triangle, which appears on your component, alerts you to important operating and maintenance instructions in this accompanying literature.

DEUTSCH
WICHTIGE SICHERHEITSHINWEISE

1 Bewahren Sie diese Anleitungen zur späteren Benutzung auf.

2 Befolgen Sie alle Anleitungen und alle Warnhinweise auf dem Gerät

3 Betreiben Sie das Gerät immer mit der korrekten Netzspannung. Angaben über den Strombedarf entnehmen Sie bitte den Betriebsanweisungen des Herstellers. Bei unterschiedlichen Betriebsspannungen kann die Verwendung anderer Netzkabel und/oder Anschlußstecker erforderlich werden.

4 Bauen Sie das Gerät nie in ein unbelüftetes Rack oder direkt über Wärme erzeugenden Geräten wie Verstärkern ein. Beachten Sie die in der Produktspezifikation aufgeführte maximale Umgebungstemperatur für den Betrieb.

5 Schlitze und Öffnungen in der Box dienen der Belüftung, damit das Gerät zuverlässig läuft und sich nicht überhitzt. Diese Öffnungen dürfen nicht abgedeckt oder blockiert werden. Auch dürfen keine Gegenstände in sie hineingesteckt werden. Verschütten Sie niemals Flüssigkeiten, gleich welcher Art, auf das Gerät.

6 Schließen Sie niemals Stromausgänge des Audioverstärkers direkt an das Gerät an.

7 Zur Vermeidung von elektrischen Schlägen oder Brandgefahr darf das Gerät weder Regen noch Feuchtigkeit ausgesetzt oder an Orten betrieben werden, wo es mit Wasser in Berührung kommen kann.

8 Versuchen Sie nie, das Gerät zu betreiben, wenn es fallen gelassen, beschädigt oder Flüssigkeiten ausgesetzt wurde oder wenn ein deutlicher Leistungsunterschied zu verzeichnen ist, der darauf hinweist, dass es gewartet werden muss.

9 Dieser Apparat sollte nur von qualifizierten Fachleuten geöffnet werden. Das Abnehmen von Abdeckungen setzt Sie gefährlichen Spannungen aus.

Dieses Dreieck, welches auf Ihrem Bauteil angebracht ist, warnt Sie vor dem Vorhandensein nicht isolierter gef hrlicher Spannung im Gerät. Diese Spannung kann so hoch sein, dass das Risiko eines Stromschlags besteht.

Dieses Dreieck, welches auf Ihrem Bauteil angebracht ist, macht Sie auf wichtige Betriebs- und Wartungshinweise in diesen Hinweisen aufmerksam.

ESPAÑOL
INSTRUCCIONES DE SEGURIDAD IMPORTANTES

1 Guarde estas instrucciones para futuras referencias.

2 Siga todas las instrucciones y tenga en cuenta las advertencias que aparecen en la unidad y en las instrucciones de funcionamiento.

3 Utilice siempre la tensión de línea correcta. Consulte las instrucciones del fabricante, donde se especifican los requisitos de alimentación. Tenga en cuenta que unas tensiones operativas diferentes pueden precisar de la utilización de diferentes cables de alimentación y/o enchufes.

4 No instale la unidad en un rack sin ventilación, o directamente sobre equipos que generen calor, como amplificadores de potencia. Tenga en cuenta la temperatura operativa ambiental máxima que se detalla en las especificaciones del producto.

5 Las ranuras y aberturas del equipo son para su ventilación - para garantizar un funcionamiento fiable y evitar que la unidad se sobrecaliente, no bloquee, cubra o inserte objetos en las aberturas. No derrame nunca líquidos de ningún tipo sobre la unidad.

6 Nunca conecte directamente salidas de amplificadores de potencia de audio a ninguno de los conectores de la unidad.

7 Para evitar descargas eléctricas o incendios, no exponga la unidad a la humedad o la lluvia, ni la utilice donde pueda estar expuesta al agua.

8 No intente utilizar la unidad si ésta ha caído, se ha dañado, ha estado expuesta a líquidos, o si muestra un cambio importante en sus prestaciones, lo cual indicaría la necesidad de una reparación.

9 Das Esta unidad deberá ser abierta únicamente por personal calificado. Si usted quita las coberturas se expondrá a voltajes peligrosos.

Este triangulo, que aparece en su componente, alerta de la presencia de una tensi n peligrosa no aislada en el interior del equipo - una tensi n que puede ser suficiente como para constituir un riesgo de descarga el ctrica.

Este triangulo, que aparece en su equipo, le alerta de instrucciones operativas y de mantenimiento importantes en los documentos que acompa an el producto.

FRANÇAIS
INSTRUCTIONS IMPORTANTES RELATIVES À LA SÉCURITÉ

1 Conservez ces instructions pour pouvoir vous y référer ultérieurement.

2 Suivez toutes ces instructions et tenez compte de tous les avertissements indiqués sur l'appareil et dans la documentation fournie avec l'appareil.

3 Utilisez toujours la tension secteur correcte. Consultez les instructions du fabricant précisant les caractéristiques d'alimentation à respecter. Attention, le type de cordon secteur et/ou de prise secteur peut varier selon des tensions en vigueur dans l'installation.

4 N'installez pas l'appareil dans un Rack mal ventilé ou directement au-dessus d'un appareil dégageant de la chaleur comme un amplificateur de puissance. Respectez la température maximale de fonctionnement précisée dans les caractéristiques techniques.

5 Les ouvertures dans le boîtier assurent la bonne ventilation de l'appareil, évitent toute surchauffe et assurent le bon fonctionnement du système. Veillez à ne pas obstruer, couvrir ou insérer d'objets dans ces ouvertures. Veillez à ne pas renverser de liquide sur l'appareil.

6 Ne reliez jamais directement les sorties audio des amplificateurs de puissance aux connecteurs de l'appareil.

7 Afin d'éviter tout risque d'électrocution ou d'incendie, n'exposez pas l'appareil à la pluie ou à l'humidité ; ne l'utilisez pas dans des endroits exposés aux projections de liquides.

8 N'essayez pas d'utiliser l'appareil si celui-ci est tombé, a été endommagé, exposé à des projections de liquides ou si vous constatez des dysfonctionnements nécessitant l'intervention d'un technicien spécialisé.

9 Cet appareil ne doit être ouvert que par un personnel de service qualifié. En enlevant les couvercles vous vous exposez à des tensions électriques dangereuses.

Le symbole de l' clair fl ch dans un triangle quilat ral sert alerter l'utilisateur sur la pr sence l'int rieur de l'appareil de tensions non isol es susceptibles de constituer un risque d' lectrocution.

Le point d'exclamation dans un triangle quilat ral sert alerter l'utilisateur sur la pr sence de nombreuses instructions de maintenance dans le manuel fourni avec l'appareil.

ITALIANO
IMPORTANTI NORME DI SICUREZZA

1 Conservare le presenti norme per l'utilizzo futuro.

2 Seguire sempre tutte le istruzioni e gli avvertimenti segnati sull'unità e nelle istruzioni operative.

3 Utilizzare sempre la corretta tensione di alimentazione. Fare riferimento al manuale del costruttore per le caratteristiche di alimentazione. Tensioni di rete diverse necessitano anche di un diverso cavo con spine differenti.

4 Non installare l'unità in un rack poco ventilato, o direttamente sopra apparecchiature che producono calore, come amplificatori di potenza. Controllare la massima temperatura ambientale di esercizio sulle specifiche tecniche del prodotto.

5 Fori ed aperture nei pannelli sono necessari per garantire un corretta ventilazione e prevenire surriscaldamenti. Queste aperture non devono essere coperte o ostruite. Non inserire oggetti di alcun tipo nei fori di ventilazione. Evitare il contatto con liquidi di qualsiasi genere.

6 Evitare di collegare le uscite di un amplificatore di potenza direttamente a qualsiasi connettore dell'unità.

7 Per evitare il rischio di scosse elettriche non esporre il prodotto a pioggia o umidità. Evitare l'uso dove possa essere esposto all'acqua.

8 Non tentare di utilizzare il prodotto se è caduto, se è stato a contatto con liquidi, o mostra chiari segni di danneggiamento o cambio di prestazioni che indicano la necessità di assistenza tecnica.

9 Ogni intervento sull'unità va eseguito esclusivamente da personale qualificato. La rimozione della copertura comporta l'esposizione al pericolo di folgorazione.

Il presente triangolo impresso sul componente avverte la presenza di tensioni pericolose non isolate all interno della copertura – tali tensioni rappresentano un pericolo di folgorazione.

Il presente triangolo impresso sul componente avverte l utente della presenza nella documentazione allegata di importanti istruzioni relative al funzionamento ed alla manutenzione.

PORTUGUESE
INSTRUÇÕES IMPORTANTES DE SEGURANÇA

1 Guarde essas instruções para uso posterior.

2 Siga todas as instruções e fique atento aos avisos marcados na unidade e nas instruções de operação.

3 Sempre use com a voltagem correta. Veja no manual de instruções do fabricante qual a alimentação necessária. Lembre-se que voltagens de operação diferentes podem precisar de um cabo ou plug diferentes.

4 Não instale a unidade em um suporte sem ventilação ou diretamente acima de equipamentos que produzam calor, como transformadores. Observe a temperatura ambiente máxima de operação indicada na especificação do produto.

5 O revestimento da unidade é provido de fendas e aberturas para ventilação – para assegurar uma operação confiável e evitar que a unidade se superaqueça. Não bloqueie, cubra ou insira objetos nas aberturas. Nunca derrube líquido de qualquer espécie na unidade.

6 Nunca ligue saídas de amplificadores de áudio diretamente a qualquer dos conectores da unidade.

7 Para evitar danos de choque ou fogo, não exponha a unidade à chuva ou umidade, ou opere-a onde haja exposição à água.

8 Não tente operar a unidade se ela for derrubada, danificada, exposta à líquidos ou apresente uma mudança de performance notável, indicando a necessidade de manutenção.

9 Esta unidade só deveria ser aberta através de pessoal de serviço qualificado. Removendo coberturas o exporão a voltagens perigosas.

Esse triângulo que aparece no seu console, alerta para a presença de voltagem perigosa e não isolada no recinto – voltagem que pode ser suficiente para constituir um risco de choque.

Esse triângulo ques aparece no seu console alerta para instruções importantes de operação e manutenção neste manual.

DANSK
VIGTIG INFORMATION OM SIKKERHED

1 Gem denne vejledning til senere brug.

2 Følg alle anvisninger og advarsler på apparatet.

3 Apparatet skal altid tilsluttes den korrekte spænding. Der henvises til brugsanvisningen, der indeholder specifikationer for strømforsyning. Der gøres opmærksom på, at ved varierende driftsspændinger kan det blive nødvendigt at bruge andre lednings- og/eller stiktyper.

4 Apparatet må ikke monteres i et kabinet uden ventilation eller lige over andet udstyr, der udvikler varme, f.eks. forstærkere. Den maksimale omgivelsestemperatur ved drift, der står opført i specifikationerne, skal overholdes.

5 Der er ventilationsåbninger i kabinettet. For at sikre apparatets drift og hindre overphedning må disse åbninger ikke blokeres eller tildækkes. Stik aldrig noget ind igennem ventilationsåbningerne, og pas på aldrig at spilde nogen form for væske på apparatet.

6 Udgangsstik fra audioforstærkere må aldrig sættes direkte i apparatet.

7 Apparatet må ikke udsættes for regn eller fugt og må ikke bruges i nærheden af vand for at undgå risiko for elektrisk stød og brand.

8 Apparatet må aldrig bruges, hvis det er blevet stødt, beskadiget eller vådt, eller hvis ændringer i ydelsen tyder på, at det trænger til eftersyn.

9 Dette apparat må kun åbnes af fagfolk. Hvis dækslet tages af, udsættes man for livsfarlig højspænding.

Denne mærkat på komponenten advarer om uisoleret, farlig spænding i apparatet - høj nok til at give elektrisk stød.

Denne mærkat på komponenten advarer om vigtig driftsog vedligeholdsinformation i den tilhørende litteratur.

SUOMI
TÄRKEITÄ TURVALLISUUSOHJEITA

1 Säilytä nämä ohjeet tulevaa käyttöä varten.

2 Seuraa kaikkia yksikköön merkittyjä ohjeita ja varoituksia.

3 Käytä aina oikeaa verkkojännitettä. Tehovaatimukset selviävät valmistajan käyttöohjeista. Huomaa, että eri käyttöjännitteet saattavat vaatia toisenlaisen verkkojohdon ja/tai-pistokkeen käytön.

4 Älä asenna yksikköä telineeseen jossa ei ole tuuletusta, tai välittömästi lämpöä tuotavien laitteiden, esim. tehovahvistimien, yläpuolelle.Ympäristön lämpötila käytössä ei saa ylittää tuotespesifikaation maksimilämpötilaa.

5 Kotelo on varustettu tuuletusreiillä ja -aukoilla. Luotettavan toiminnan varmistamiseksi ja ylilämpenemisen välttämiseksi näitä aukkoja ei saa sulkea tai peittää. Mitään esineitä ei saa työntää tuuletusaukkoihin. Mitään nesteitä ei saa kaataa yksikköön.

6 Älä kytke audiotehovahvistimen lähtöjä suoraan mihinkään yksikön liittimeen.

7 Sähköiskun ja palovaaran välttämiseksi yksikkö ei saa olla sateessa tai kosteassa, eikä sitä saa käyttää märässä ympäristössä.

8 Älä käytä yksikköä jos se on pudonnut, vaurioitunut, kostunut, tai jos sen suorituskyky on huomattavasti muuttunut, mikä vaatii huoltoa.

9 Yksikön saa avata vain laitteeseen perehtynyt huoltohenkilö. Kansien poisto altistaa sinut vaarallisille jännitteille.

Tämä kolmio, joka esiintyy komponentissasi, varoittaa sinua eristämättömän vaarallisen jännitteen esiintymisestä yksikön sisällä. Tämä jännite saattaa olla riittävän korkea aiheuttamaan sähköiskuvaaran.

Tämä kolmio, joka esiintyy komponentissasi, kertoo sinulle, että tässä tuotedokumentoinnissa esiintyy tärkeitä käyttö- ja ylläpito-ohjeita.

NORSK
VIKTIG INFORMASJON OM SIKKERHET

1 Ta vare på denne veiledningen for senere bruk.

2 Følg alle anvisningene og advarslene som er angitt på apparatet.

3 Apparatet skal alltid anvendes med korrekt spenning. Produktbeskrivelsen inneholder spesifikasjoner for strømkrav. Vær oppmerksom på at det ved ulike driftsspenninger kan være nødvendig å bruke en annen ledning- og/eller støpseltype.

4 Apparatet skal ikke monteres i skap uten ventilasjon, eller direkte over varmeproduserende utstyr, som for eksempel kraftforsterkere. Den maksimale romtemperaturen som står oppgitt i produktbeskrivelsen, skal overholdes.

5 Apparatet er utstyrt med ventilasjonsåpninger. For at apparatet skal være pålitelig i bruk\ og ikke veropphetes, må disse åpningene ikke blokkeres eller tildekkes. Stikk aldri noe inn i ventilasjonsåpningene, og pass på at det aldri søles noen form for væske på apparatet.

6 Utgangsplugger fra audioforsterkere skal aldri koples direkte til apparatet.

7 Unngå brannfare og elektrisk støt ved å sørge for at apparatet ikke utsettes for regn eller fuktighet og ikke anvendes i nærheten av vann.

8 Apparatet skal ikke brukes hvis det har blitt utsatt for støt, er skadet eller blitt vått, eller hvis endringer i ytelsen tyder på at det trenger service.

9 Dette apparatet skal kun åpnes av fagfolk. Hvis dekselet fjernes, utsettes man for livsfarlig høyspenning.

Komponenten er merket med denne trekanten, som er en advarsel om at det finnes uisolert, farlig spenning inne i kabinettet - høy nok til å utgjøre en fare for elektrisk støt.

Komponenten er merket med denne trekanten, som betyr at den tilhørende litteraturen inneholder viktige opplysninger om drift og ved.

SVENSKA
VIKTIGA SÄKERHETSFÖRESKRIFTER

1 Spara dessa föreskrifter för framtida bruk.

2 Följ alla anvisningar och varningar som anges på enheten.

3 Använd alltid rätt nätspänning. Se tillverkarens bruksanvisningar för information om effektkrav. Märkväl, att andra matningsspänningar eventuellt kräver att en annan typs nätsladd och/eller kontakt används.

4 Installera inte enheten i ett oventilerat stativ, eller direkt ovanför utrustningar som avger värme, t ex effektförstärkare. Se till att omgivningens temperatur vid drift inte överskrider det angivna värdet i produktspecifikationen.

5 Behållaren är försedd med hål och öppningar för ventilering. För att garantera tillförlitlig funktion och förhindra överhettning får dessa öppningar inte blockeras eller täckas. Inga föremål får skuffas in genom ventilationshålen. Inga vätskor får spillas på enheten.

6 Anslut aldrig audioeffektförstärkarutgångar direkt till någon av enhetens kontakter.

7 För att undvika elstöt eller brandfara får enheten inte utsättas för regn eller fukt, eller användas på ställen där den blir våt.

8 Använd inte enheten om den har fallit i golvet, skadats, blivit våt, eller om dess prestanda förändrats märkbart, vilket kräver service.

9 Enheten får öppnas endast av behörig servicepersonal. Farliga spänningar blir tillgängliga när locken tas bort.

Denna triangel, som visas på din komponent, varnar dig om en oisolerad farlig spänning inne i enheten. Denna spänning är eventuellt så hög att fara för elstöt föreligger.

Denna triangel, som visas på din komponent, anger att viktiga bruksanvisningar och serviceanvisningar ingår i dokumentationen i fråga.

(US) Unpacking and Inspection

After unpacking the unit, save all packing materials in case the unit ever needs to be shipped. Thoroughly inspect the modules and packing materials for signs of damage. Report any damage to the carrier at once; report equipment malfunction to the dealer.

(DE) Auspacken und Überprüfung

Bewahren Sie nach dem Auspacken des Geräts das Verpackungsmaterial für den Fall auf, dass Sie das Gerät wieder versenden müssen. Überprüfen Sie die Module und die Verpackung sorgfältig auf Anzeichen von Beschädigung. Etwaige Schäden sind dem Transporteur unverzüglich anzuzeigen; Funktionsstörungen sind dem zuständigen Händler zu melden.

(ES) Desembalaje e Inspección

Después de desembalar la unidad, guarde todos los materiales de embalaje por si alguna vez transportar la unidad. Inspeccione con atención los módulos y los materiales de embalaje para comprobar que no muestren desperfectos. Informe inmediatamente de cualquier desperfecto al transportista; informe de cualquier problema de funcionamiento del equipo a su distribuidor.

(FR) Contenu de L'emballage et Inspection

Après avoir ouvert l'emballage, conservez-le pour tout retour. Inspectez avec soin les modules et les matériaux d'emballage pour tout signe de dommage. Veuillez rapporter immédiatement les dommages auprès du transporteur. Les dysfonctionnements du matériel doivent être signalés à votre revendeur.

(IT) Disimballaggio ed Ispezione

Dopo aver disimballato l'unità, salvi tutto il materiale d'imballaggio, in caso Lei abbia bisogno di spedire l'unità. Ispezioni attentamente i moduli ed il materiale d'imballaggio per vedere se riportano segni di danno. Riporti subito ogni segno di danno al corriere; riferisca il malfunzionamento dell'attrezzatura al suo rivenditore.

(PT) Retirando a Embalagem e Inspecionando

Depois de desembalar a unidade, guarde a embalagem caso precise enviar a unidade para manutenção. Inspecione cuidadosamente o módulo e a embalagem procurando sinais de dano. Avise à loja qualquer tipo de dano ou mal funcionamento do equipamento.

1

Getting Started

About The MC-12 1-2
Highlights 1-4
Product Registration 1-5
Installation Considerations 1-5
Remote Control Battery Installation 1-6

ABOUT THE MC-12

Thank you for purchasing the MC-12 Digital Controller, a reference-quality, 12-channel audio and video control center with independent zone monitoring to provide control of input source selection in three zones at the same time. As flexible as it is powerful, the MC-12 includes 12 configurable inputs, each of which can be assigned to its 13 digital audio, 8 analog audio, 5 composite video, 8 S-video, or 4 component video input connectors. The analog audio input connectors can be configured for stereo or 5.1-channel sources.

Beyond the standard 5.1-channel audio output connectors, the rear panel includes stereo rear and stereo subwoofer connectors, as well as stereo auxiliary connectors to provide even more audio channels. All Main Zone audio output connectors include 24-bit/96kHz D/A converters operating in dual differential mode. In addition, the MC-12 Balanced includes balanced audio output connectors for all Main Zone and Zone 2 channels.

Inside and out, the MC-12 is designed to remain viable in a future of emerging technologies. Two RS-232 connectors are provided for serial control, one to perform flash-memory software upgrades and backup and restore configuration files, and another to support future expansion. Inside, two expansion slots are available for hardware upgrades, making it possible to more than quadruple the MC-12's processing power.

More than just an audio and video control center, the MC-12 features the latest version of Lexicon's critically acclaimed Logic 7 decoding, which derives 7.1-channel output from stereo, 5.1-, and 6.1-channel sources. Unlike other decoders, Logic 7 is compatible with all input sources and requires no special encoding. Because the improvement it provides is clearly audible, Logic 7 decoding is widely regarded as the finest available.

The MC-12 also offers LIVE! (Lexicon Intelligent Variable Environment), designed to transform the way your listening room sounds with the live sound that is created within the room by the occupants of the room. LIVE! does not (nor is it meant to) work with pre-recorded material. LIVE! provides a realistic illusion of a larger, more reverberant listening space – ideal for musicians wishing to practice or perform with the sound of a larger venue.

LIVE! is a unique, sophisticated reverberation system that uses a combination of microphones and digital signal processing (DSP) to enhance a room's acoustics and create the illusion of a much larger space. When you engage in normal conversation, it seems as if you are in a large room. When you practice or perform with a musical instrument, it seems as if you are in a concert hall. Choose from one of three customizable presets to create an ambiance to liven up a party or amaze your friends.

In addition to Logic 7 and LIVE!, the MC-12 is also equipped with Dolby Digital Surround EX, Dolby Pro Logic, Dolby Pro Logic II, Dolby Pro Logic IIx, DTS 96/24, DTS NEO:6, DTS-ES, THX Ultra2, and THX Surround EX decoding. THX Ultra2 Certification guarantees that the MC-12 meets the highest THX performance specifications.

With four 32-bit floating-point SHARC™ digital signal processing (DSP) engines, the MC-12 offers unparalleled processing power. These DSP engines perform custom Lexicon processing such as Logic 7 decoding, bass enhancement, dialog enhancement, auto azimuth, 5-speaker enhancement, bass management, high-precision digital crossovers, and tone controls. This processing is available at sample rates up to 96kHz, with 24-bit resolution to retain top performance from all input sources and listening modes. A fifth DSP engine is dedicated to decoding multi-channel compressed audio sources.

High-precision 24-bit/96kHz A/D converters can be used to convert stereo and 5.1 analog audio input signals to digital signals, allowing the MC-12 to provide the benefits of precise digital signal processing without sacrificing signal integrity. Alternatively, stereo and 5.1 analog signals can bypass A/D conversion and internal processing to remain in the analog domain straight to the output connectors.

Digital audio input signals are processed through a two-stage phase lock loop for extremely low intrinsic jitter and high rejection. Lexicon's proprietary auto azimuth technology corrects timing and level imbalances in stereo sources, ensuring exceptionally accurate playback of surround-encoded sources. A digital audio pass-through option is available for recording digital signals with a CD recorder or a similar component.

Complementing its audio performance, the MC-12 features two broadcast-quality video switchers. An ultra-wide bandwidth component video switcher accepts analog component or RGB video signals, while a composite and S-video switcher accepts high-quality NTSC, PAL or SECAM video signals. The component video switcher can pass High-Definition TV (HDTV) signals, and Standard-Definition TV signals. Both switchers are designed to pass video signals without alteration or degradation.

An unparalleled processor, the MC-12 conveys the best in music and cinema with awesome power and leading-edge technological sophistication. Even the most demanding enthusiasts will be impressed with its exceptional performance. The MC-12 is a must-have addition for any high-quality home theater.

HIGHLIGHTS

- 12 channels
- 12 configurable inputs
- 3 independent zones
- 13 digital audio input connectors, including 6 S/PDIF coaxial, 6 S/PDIF optical, and 1 AES/EBU
- 5.1-channel analog audio input connector
- Analog bypass option for stereo and 5.1-channel analog audio input connectors
- Auto switching between digital and analog audio input connectors
- 24-bit/192kHz D/A converters for all Main Zone audio channels
- Stereo subwoofer and LFE output connectors
- Automatic and manual calibration of speaker distances and output levels
- 4 component video input connectors with full HDTV compatibility
- BNC component video input and output connectors
- 8 S-video input connectors
- 5 composite video input connectors
- Broadcast-quality video switching
- Four 32-bit DSP engines
- Separate DSP engine for decoding compressed audio sources
- Logic 7 decoding
- LIVE! (Lexicon Intelligent Variable Environment)
- Dolby Digital Surround EX, Dolby Pro Logic, Dolby Pro Logic II, and Dolby Pro Logic IIx decoding
- DTS 96/24, DTS NEO:6, and DTS-ES (discrete and matrix) decoding
- THX Ultra2 and THX Surround EX decoding
- THX Ultra2 Certification
- RS-232 connector for flash memory software upgrades and configuration backups
- 2 digital audio output connectors
- 3 trigger output connectors
- Rear panel IR input connector
- 4 microphone input connectors
- 2 internal expansion slots
- Removable access panel
- Balanced audio output connectors for all Main Zone and Zone 2 channels (MC-12 Balanced only)
- EQ option available

PRODUCT REGISTRATION

Please register the MC-12 Digital Controller within 15 days of purchase. Register online at www.lexicon.com or complete and return the product registration card attached to the back cover of this user guide. Retain the sales receipt as proof of warranty coverage.

INSTALLATION CONSIDERATIONS

The MC-12 requires special care during installation to ensure optimal performance. Pay particular attention to instructions below and to other precautions that appear throughout this user guide.

Do install the MC-12 on a solid, flat, level surface such as a table or shelf. The MC-12 can also be installed in a standard 19-inch equipment rack using an optional rack-mount kit available from an authorized Lexicon dealer.

Do select a dry, well-ventilated location out of direct sunlight.

Do Not expose the MC-12 to high temperatures, humidity, steam, smoke, dampness or excessive dust. Avoid installing the MC-12 near radiators and other heat-producing appliances.

Do Not install the MC-12 near unshielded TV or FM antennas, cable TV decoders, or other RF-emitting devices that might cause interference.

Do Not place the MC-12 on a thick rug or carpet, or cover the MC-12 with a cloth, as this might prevent proper cooling.

Do Not place the MC-12 on a windowsill or any location exposed to direct sunlight.

Do Not obstruct the front-panel IR receiver window. The remote control must be in line of sight with the IR receiver for proper operation.

Do Not install the MC-12 on a surface that is unstable or unable to support all four feet, **unless** it is installed in an equipment rack.

Do Not stack the MC-12 directly above heat-producing equipment such as a power amplifier.

CAUTION!

Before moving the MC-12, power the unit off using the rear-panel power switch and unplug the power cord from the wall outlet.

REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY INSTALLATION

The remote control requires two AA batteries. The batteries should be replaced as needed. Alkaline batteries, which last longer without leaking, are recommended. When battery power is low, the remote control enters a low-voltage condition, preventing it from operating the MC-12. When this occurs, replace the batteries. Normal operation will resume when new batteries are installed.

To replace the remote control batteries:

1. Locate the battery compartment on the back of the remote control. Press the tab and lift the cover away from the remote control.
2. Remove old batteries (if applicable).
3. Observing the proper polarity, insert two AA batteries.
4. Align the cover over the battery compartment and gently press down until it snaps back into place.
5. Dispose of the old batteries (if applicable).

2

Basic Operation

Front-Panel Overview 2-2

Rear-Panel Overview 2-6

Remote Control Overview 2-10

- Operation Considerations 2-10
- Main Menu 2-11
- Menu Navigation 2-11
- Menu Item Selection 2-11
- Command Bank Activation 2-13
- Command Matrix 2-14

About the Zones 2-19

Two-line Status 2-19

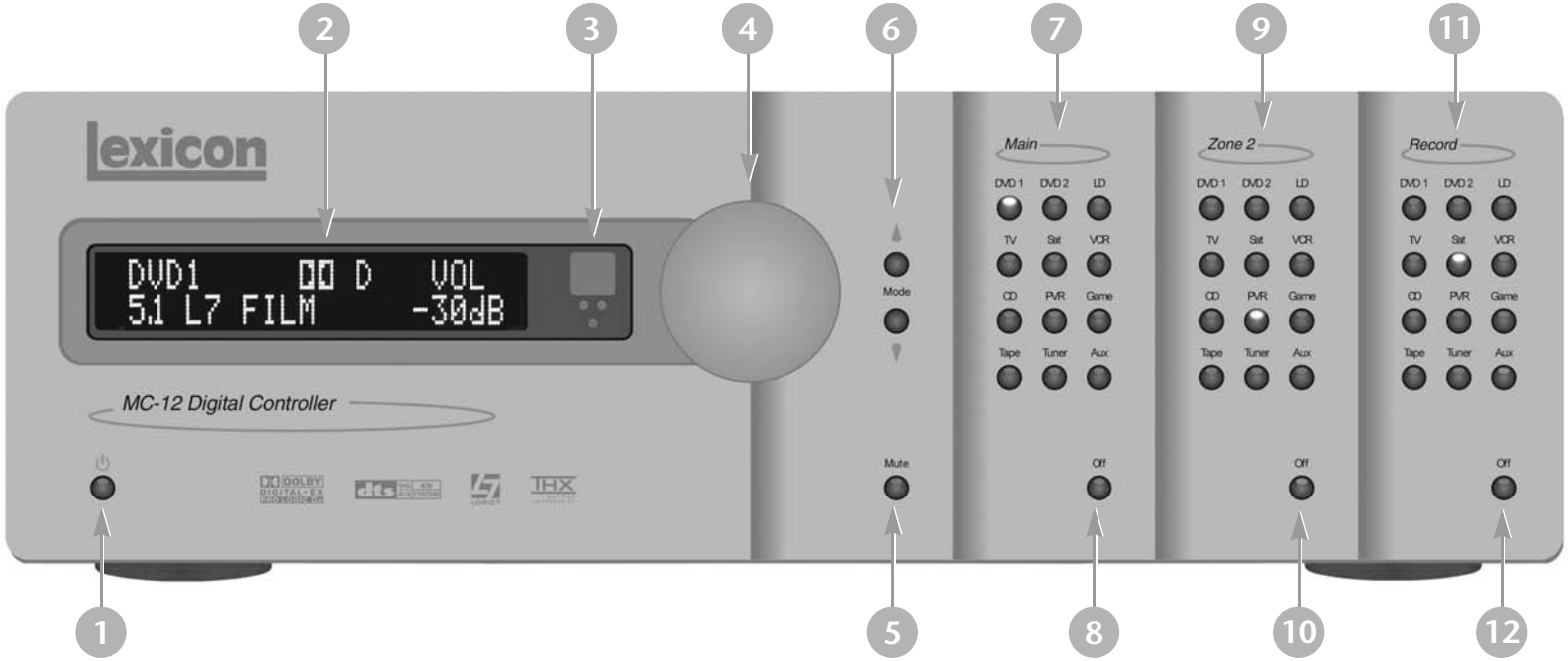
Status Menus 2-20

- Status Menu Descriptions 2-21
- Status Menu Parameter Descriptions 2-25

Status Menu Level Meters 2-26

FRONT-PANEL OVERVIEW

The MC-12 is shown below. The MC-12 Balanced is shown on page 2-4. The front panels are identical, but the MC-12 Balanced has a larger chassis.



1. Standby Button
2. Front Panel Display
3. IR Receiver
4. Volume Knob
5. Mute Button
6. Mode ▲ and ▼ Buttons
7. Main Zone Input Selection Buttons
8. Main Zone Off Button
9. Zone 2 Input Selection Buttons
10. Zone 2 Off Button
11. Record Zone Input Selection Buttons
12. Record Zone Off Button

1 STANDBY BUTTON

Use the Standby button to activate or deactivate standby mode. The Standby button performs no function when the MC-12 rear panel power switch is powered off. When standby mode is activated, all MC-12 zones that were active during the last session are reactivated. The red LED in the standby button lights to indicate that standby mode is activated. Power is still supplied to the MC-12 when it is put into standby mode.

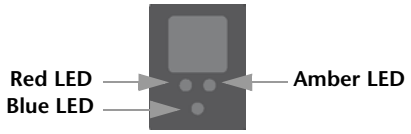
2 FRONT-PANEL DISPLAY

Use the Front-Panel display to view the current input, listening mode, input source, and volume level. The 2 x 20 character display also functions as a display for messages and menus.

3 IR RECEIVER

The IR Receiver receives infrared commands from the MC-12 remote control. There are three associated LEDs.

- The amber LED blinks when a remote control command is received.
- The red LED lights when the A/D converters are overloading.
- The blue LED lights when the MC-12 is powered on and activated – even if the FRONT PANEL DISPLAY menu STATUS parameter is set to ALWAYS OFF.



4 VOLUME KNOB

Use the Volume knob to adjust volume level in all zones.

Note:

When MC-12 output levels are properly calibrated, the +0dB volume level setting corresponds to the THX reference level (75dB).

To adjust the Main Zone volume level:

Rotate the volume knob clockwise or counter-clockwise to increase or decrease the volume level in 1dB increments. A horizontal bar graph indicating the current Main Zone volume level appears in the on-screen and front-panel displays. The Main Zone volume range is –80 to +12dB.

To adjust the Zone 2 or Record Zone volume level:

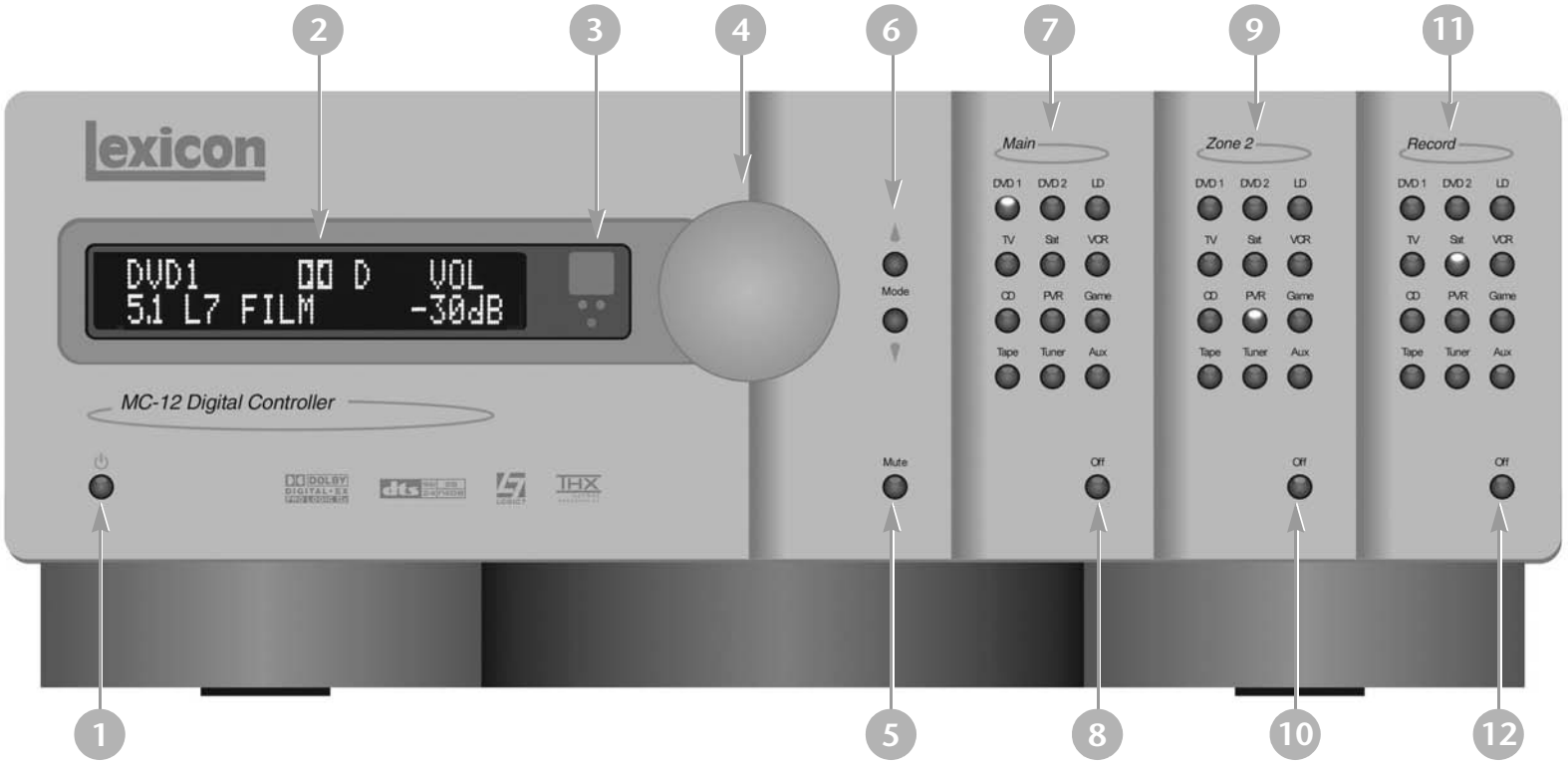
1. Press and hold the front panel Zone 2 or Record Zone input selection button that corresponds with the current input source. For example, if the current input source is DVD1, press and hold the DVD1 input selection button.
2. Push and hold a Zone 2 or Record Zone input selection button while rotating the volume knob clockwise or counter-clockwise to increase or decrease volume level in 1dB increments. A horizontal bar graph appears on the on-screen and front panel displays. The Zone 2 or Record Zone volume range is –80 to +12dB.

3. When the Zone 2 or Record Zone volume level has been set, release the input selection button.

Remote control input selection buttons cannot be used to select Zone 2 or Record Zone volume level adjustment, even if the Zone 2 or Record Zone command bank is activated.

FRONT-PANEL OVERVIEW *(continued)*

The MC-12 Balanced, shown below, has a larger chassis than the MC-12, shown on page 2-2. Otherwise, they are identical.



5 MUTE BUTTON

Press the **Mute** button to mute the MC-12 Main Zone volume; "MUTE ON" appears in the on-screen and front-panel displays. Press the **Mute** button again to restore the MC-12 volume to its original level. The VOLUME CONTROL SETUP and MUTE LEVEL parameter can be used to set mute levels.

Mute can be activated automatically or manually. For example, the MC-12 briefly activates mute when changing input sources or listening modes. The amber LED in the Mute button lights whenever mute is activated.

6 MODE ▲ AND ▼ BUTTONS

Use the Mode buttons to scroll to the previous and next available listening mode. Scrolling occurs in the order shown in the MODE ADJUST menu. Press the Mode ▲ button to scroll upward through available listening modes. Press the Mode ▼ button to scroll downward through available listening modes.

7 MAIN ZONE INPUT SELECTION BUTTONS

Selects the input in the Main Zone. When an input is selected, a blue LED lights on the corresponding input selection button. When the Main Zone is deactivated, pressing a Main Zone input selection button activates the Main Zone and selects the corresponding input. Zone 2 and the Record Zone remain deactivated until a Zone 2 or Record Zone input is selected.

8 MAIN ZONE OFF BUTTON

Deactivates the Main Zone.

9 ZONE 2 INPUT SELECTION BUTTONS

Selects the input in Zone 2. When an input is selected, an amber LED lights on the corresponding input selection button. When Zone 2 is deactivated, pressing a Zone 2 input selection button activates Zone 2 and selects the corresponding input. The Main and Record Zones remain deactivated until a Main or Record Zone input is selected.

10 ZONE 2 OFF BUTTON

Deactivates Zone 2.

11 RECORD ZONE INPUT SELECTION BUTTONS

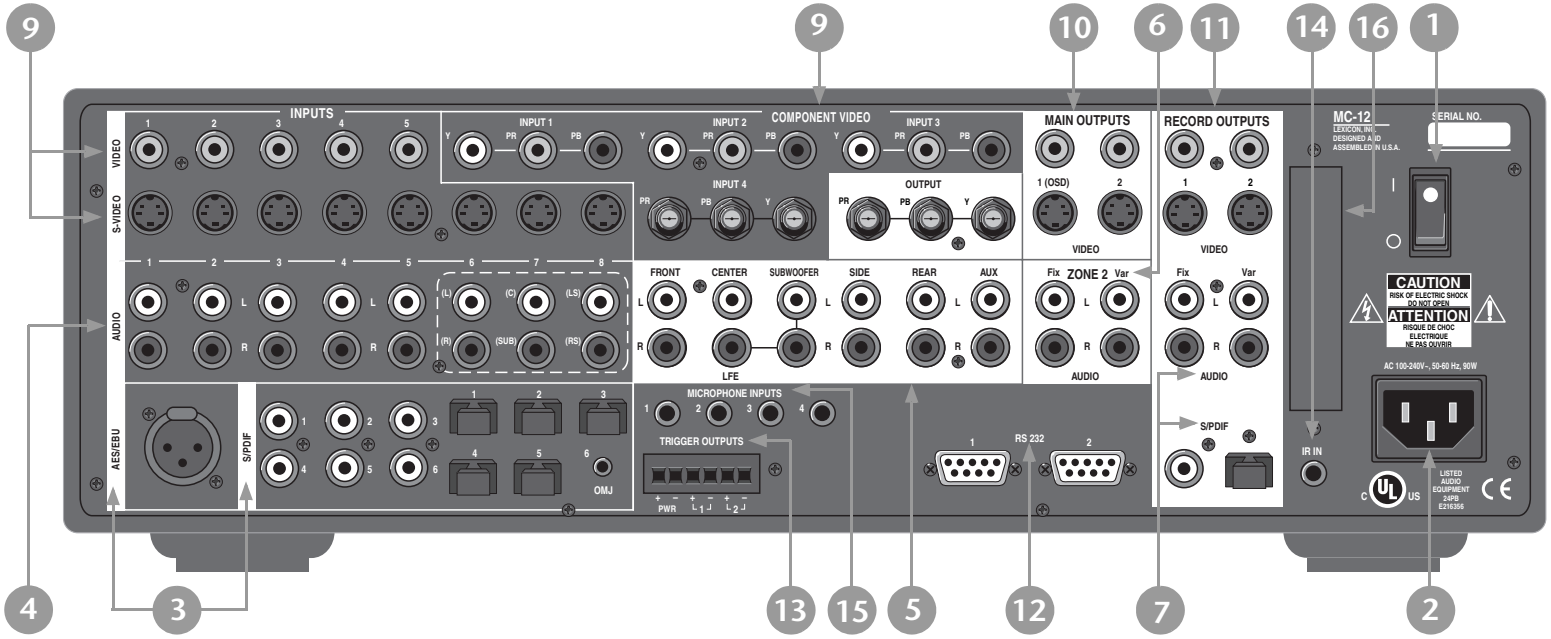
Selects the input in the Record Zone. When an input is selected, a red LED lights on the corresponding input selection button. When the Record Zone is deactivated, pressing a Record Zone input selection button activates the Record Zone and selects the corresponding input. The Main Zone and Zone 2 remain deactivated until a Main Zone or Zone 2 input is selected.

12 RECORD ZONE OFF BUTTON

Deactivates the Record Zone.

REAR-PANEL OVERVIEW

The MC-12 is shown below. The MC-12 Balanced, shown on page 2-8, includes balanced audio connectors for the Main Zone and Zone 2. Otherwise both models are identical. The numbers in the rear-panel illustrations correspond with the numbered items.



1. Power Switch
2. AC Input Adaptor
3. Digital Audio Input Connectors
4. Analog Audio Input Connectors
5. Main Zone Audio Output Connectors
6. Zone 2 Audio Output Connectors
7. Record Zone Audio Output Connectors
8. Balanced Audio Output Connectors (MC-12 Balanced)
9. Video Input Connectors
10. Main Video Output Connectors
11. Record Zone Video Output Connectors
12. RS-232 Connectors
13. Trigger Output Connectors
14. IR In Connector
15. Microphone Input Connectors
16. Removable Access Panel

Caution!

Never make or break connections to the MC-12 unless the MC-12 and all associated components are powered off.

1 POWER SWITCH

Use the Power switch to power the MC-12 on or off. The **I** and **O** positions represent "on" and "off" status respectively. When the MC-12 is powered on, the front-panel Standby button or remote control On button can be used to activate and deactivate standby mode. When the MC-12 is powered off, standby mode is not available.

2 AC INPUT CONNECTOR

Provides power to the MC-12 through the supplied power cord (3 wire, 10 amp, IEC 320).

3 DIGITAL AUDIO INPUT CONNECTORS (S/PDIF & AES/EBU)

Provide digital audio input in all zones. Six S/PDIF coaxial, six S/PDIF optical (5 TosLink /1 OMJ), and one AES/EBU (XLR) input connectors are available. These connectors are compatible with PCM (44.1, 48, 88.2, and 96kHz), Dolby Digital, and DTS-ES sources. These connectors are not compatible with MPEG or MP3 sources.

4 ANALOG AUDIO INPUT CONNECTORS

Provide analog audio input. Eight stereo analog audio input connectors labeled 1 to 8 are available. Connectors labeled 6, 7 and 8 can be configured as 5.1-channel connectors.

When a 5.1-channel analog audio source is present in the Main Zone, input signals are sent to the Main Zone audio output connectors as indicated in the table below. When a 5.1-channel analog source is present in the Main Zone and the INPUT SETUP menu ZONE2 IN or RECORD IN parameter is set to DMIX, only the (L) and (R) input signals are sent to the Zone 2 or Record Zone audio output connectors.

Input Connector	Output Connector
(L) & (R)	Front L/ R
(C)	Center
(SUB)	Subwoofer L/R & LFE
(LS) & (RS)	Side L/R and Rear L/R

5 MAIN ZONE AUDIO OUTPUT CONNECTORS

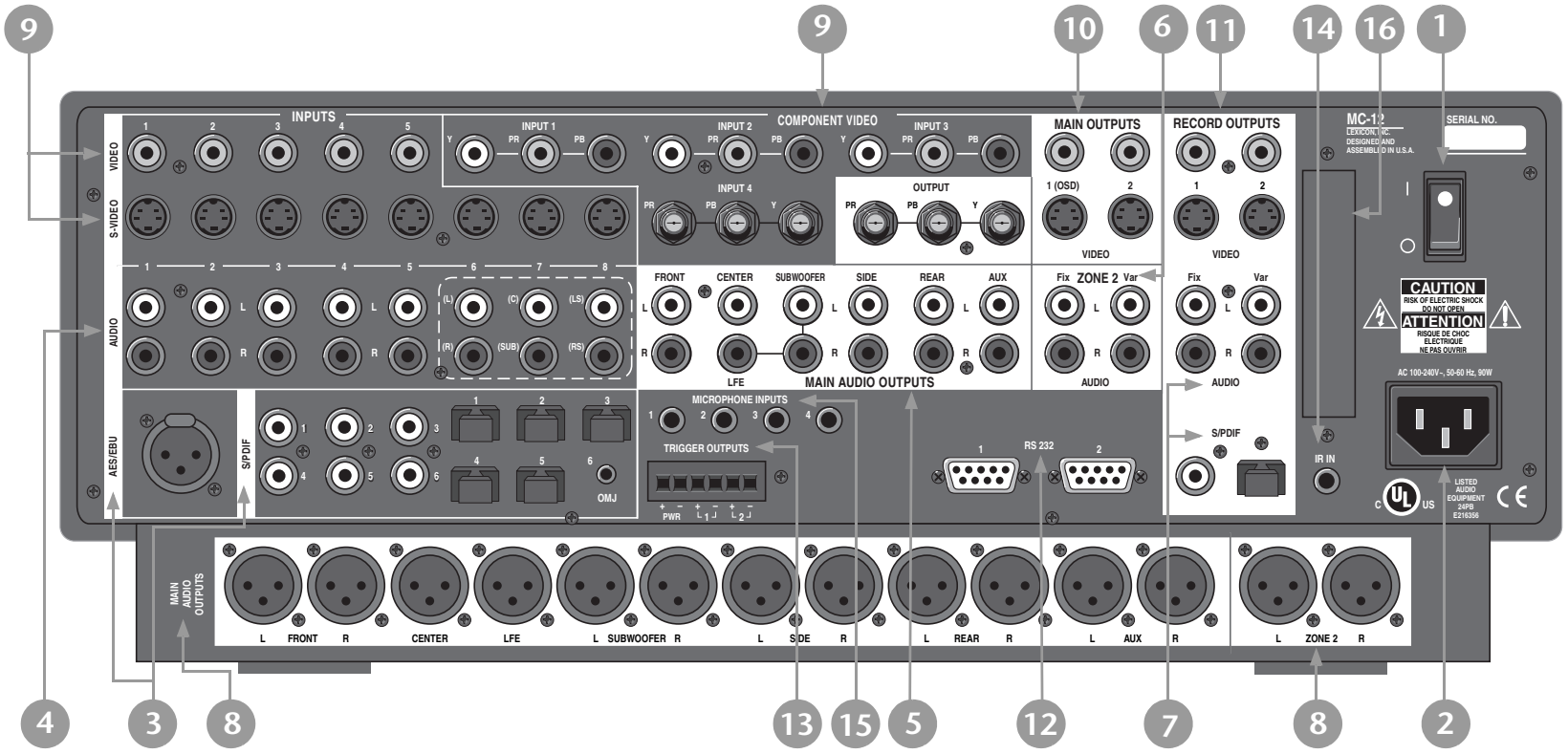
Provide analog audio output in the Main Zone. Ten connectors labeled Front L/R, Center, LFE, Subwoofer L/R, Side L/R, and Rear L/R are available. Two connectors labeled Aux L/R are provided for future expansion.

6 ZONE 2 AUDIO OUTPUT CONNECTORS

Provide analog audio output in Zone 2. Two stereo connectors labeled Audio L/R are available. The connector labeled Fix passes audio at fixed output levels. The connector labeled Var passes audio at variable output levels and includes a built-in volume control.

REAR-PANEL OVERVIEW *(continued)*

The MC-12 is shown on page 2-4. The MC-12 Balanced, shown below, includes balanced audio connectors for the Main Zone and Zone 2. Otherwise both models are identical.



Caution!

Never make or break connections to the MC-12 unless the MC-12 and all associated components are powered off.

7 RECORD ZONE AUDIO OUTPUT CONNECTORS

Provide analog and digital audio output in the Record Zone. Two stereo connectors labeled Audio L/R are available for analog audio output. The connector labeled Fix passes audio at fixed output levels. The connector labeled Var passes audio at variable output levels and includes a built-in volume control. Two S/PDIF connectors (one coaxial and one optical) are available for digital audio output.

Alternatively, these connectors can be used to connect a recording device. When the Record Zone audio output connector labeled Var is sent to a recording device, you should set the VOLUME CONTROL SETUP menu REC PWR ON parameter to +0dB to achieve appropriate recording levels. The Record Zone audio output connector labeled Var passes audio at variable output levels. Adjusting Record Zone volume level will affect the recording.

8 BALANCED AUDIO OUTPUT CONNECTORS (MC-12 BALANCED)

Provide balanced analog audio output in the Main Zone and Zone 2. Ten connectors labeled Front L/R, Center, LFE, Subwoofer L/R, Side L/R, and Rear L/R are available in the Main Zone. The connectors labeled Aux L/R are provided for future expansion. Two connectors labeled Zone 2 L/R are available in Zone 2.

9 VIDEO INPUT CONNECTORS

Provide video input in the Main and Record Zones. Five composite video connectors labeled Video 1 to 5, eight S-video connectors labeled S-Video 1 to 8, and four component video connectors (three RCA and one BNC) labeled INPUT 1 to 4 are available. The component video connectors are not available for the Record Zone.

10 MAIN VIDEO OUTPUT CONNECTORS

Provide video output in the Main Zone. Two composite video connectors, two S-video connectors, and one component video connector (BNC) are available. The composite and S-video connectors labeled 1 (OSD) incorporate the on-screen display.

Note:

- *Composite video output connectors are available when a composite or S-video source is present.*
- *S-video output connectors are available when an S-video source is present.*
- *Component video output connectors are available when a component video source is present.*

11 RECORD ZONE VIDEO OUTPUT CONNECTORS

Provide video output in the Record Zone. Two composite video connectors and two S-video connectors are available. Alternatively, these connectors can be used to connect a video recording device.

12 RS-232 CONNECTORS

The RS-232 serial connector (1) is used to perform backup and restoration of configuration files and flash memory software upgrades. The RS-232 connector (2) is capable of supporting future developments.

REAR-PANEL OVERVIEW *(continued)*

13 TRIGGER OUTPUT CONNECTORS

Provide 12V DC output to control connected components. Three trigger output connectors are available on a removable terminal block. The PWR connector – the power trigger output connector – is not configurable. It is activated when the MC-12 is activated, and deactivated when the MC-12 is deactivated. The trigger output connectors (1) and (2) can be configured for remote or program operation.

14 IR IN CONNECTOR

Accepts input of IR signals from infrared distribution equipment. One 3.5mm jack that accepts a stereo plug (Tip/Ring/Sleeve connection) or mono plug (Tip/Sleeve connection) is available.

15 MICROPHONE INPUT CONNECTORS

Provide microphone input for speaker distance and output level calibration. Additionally, inputs 1 (left) and 2 (right) are used when LIVE! is active. Four 3.5mm Tip/Ring/Sleeve connectors are available.

16 REMOVABLE ACCESS PANEL

Accommodates connectors for emerging technologies.

REMOTE CONTROL OVERVIEW

The MC-12 remote control provides full operation of the MC-12, including commands such as menu navigation that are not available from the front-panel. The command matrix, beginning on page 2-14, indicates the commands remote control buttons perform when each command bank is active. The numbered items in the matrix correspond with the remote control illustrations.

OPERATION CONSIDERATIONS

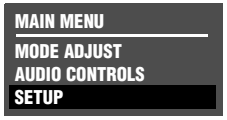
The following factors can improve or impede remote control operation.

Note the following before operating the MC-12 remote control:

- The remote control must be in line-of-sight with the front-panel IR receiver. Eliminate obstructions between the remote control and the IR receiver. The remote control may become unreliable if strong sunlight or fluorescent light shines on the IR receiver.
- For optimal performance, position the remote control at a 30 degree angle no more than 17 feet (5m) from the MC-12. Placing the MC-12 inside a smoked glass cabinet will reduce the remote control range.
- Remote controls for different components can interfere with one another. Avoid using remote controls for different components at the same time.
- Remote control batteries should be replaced as needed.

MAIN MENU

The MAIN MENU represents the beginning of the menu structure. Use the MAIN MENU to open the three main menu branches: MODE ADJUST, AUDIO CONTROLS, and SETUP.



MENU NAVIGATION

Use the remote control Menu and arrow buttons to navigate the extensive menu structure shown in the Appendix. The table below indicates the navigation commands remote control buttons perform when the Main Zone command bank is activated.

Button	Navigation Function(s)
	• When no menus are displayed, press the MENU button to open the MAIN MENU. • When a menu is open, press the MENU button to close the menu structure.
	• When no menus are displayed, press the ▸ arrow button to open the MAIN MENU. • When a menu is open, press the ▸ arrow button to select the highlighted menu item.
	• When a menu is open, press the ◂ arrow button to close the menu and, in most cases, open the previous menu. Subsequent presses continue to close the current menu and open the previous menu until the MAIN MENU is closed. When the MAIN MENU is closed, the menu structure is also closed. • When no menus are displayed, pressing the ◂ arrow button performs no function. • When a drop-down menu is open, press the ◂ arrow button to select the current setting and close the drop-down menu.
	When a menu is open, press the ▲ or ▼ arrow buttons to scroll upward or downward through the complete list of menu items. All menu items are displayed on-screen. A scroll bar appears on the right side of the menu when menu items exceed the top and bottom margins of the display, and the cursor automatically advances to the next menu item when the first or last menu item is passed. The highlighted menu item is displayed on the MC-12 front-panel.

MENU ITEM SELECTION

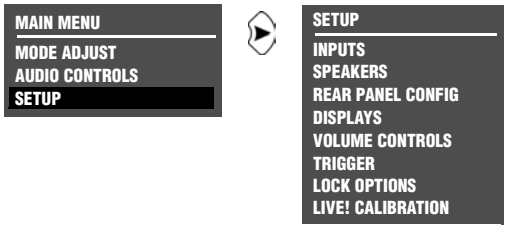
Use the remote control Menu arrows to select menu items.

To select a menu item:

1. Press the remote control ▲ or ▼ arrow buttons to highlight the desired menu item.
2. When the desired menu item is highlighted, press the ▸ arrow button to select the highlighted item. If you select an option, another menu displays. If you select a parameter, a parameter menu or horizontal graph opens.

MENU OPTIONS

Selecting a menu option opens another menu within the menu structure. For example, selecting SETUP from the MAIN MENU opens the SETUP menu.

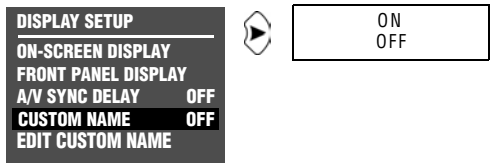


MENU PARAMETERS

Selecting a menu parameter opens a drop-down menu or horizontal bar graph that is used to select the desired setting.

PARAMETER DROP-DOWN MENUS

Selecting a menu parameter opens a drop-down menu that contains a list of available parameter settings. For example, selecting the DISPLAY SETUP menu CUSTOM NAME parameter opens a drop-down menu which is used to select the ON or OFF setting.



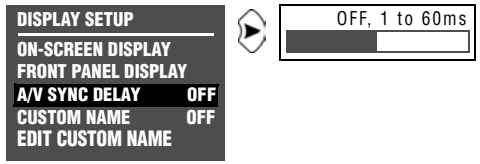
To select a setting in a parameter drop-down menu:

1. When the drop-down menu opens, press the remote control ▲ or ▼ arrow button to scroll up or down through the complete list of available settings. The current setting is displayed beneath the parameter name in the on-screen and front-panel displays.
2. When the desired setting appears beneath the parameter name, press the ◀ arrow button to accept the setting and close the drop-down menu.

HORIZONTAL BAR GRAPHS

Selecting some menu parameters opens a horizontal bar graph. The bar graph indicates the position the current parameter setting falls within the entire parameter range. The setting appears to the right of the parameter name in the on-screen and front-panel displays.

For example, selecting the DISPLAY SETUP menu A/V SYNC DELAY parameter opens the horizontal bar graph shown below, which is used to adjust the amount of audio delay.



To adjust a parameter setting with a horizontal bar graph:

1. When the horizontal bar graph appears, press the remote control ▲ or ▼ arrow button to increase or decrease the setting in designated increments.

   The setting appears to the right of the parameter name in the on-screen and front-panel displays.

2. When you have finished adjusting the settings, press the ◀ arrow button to select the setting and close the horizontal bar graph.

COMMAND BANK ACTIVATION

Remote control buttons perform different commands depending on whether the Main Zone, Zone 2, Record Zone, or Shift command bank is activated. Pressing and releasing a remote control command bank selection button – MAIN, ZONE, REC, or SHIFT – activates the corresponding command bank. The selected command bank remains activated until another command bank is activated.

The command bank selection buttons themselves do not send commands to the MC-12. When pressed and released, these buttons activate the corresponding command bank. For example, pressing and releasing the SHIFT button activates the Shift command bank. When the Shift command bank is activated, pressing and releasing the DVD-1 button turns off the DVD1 input for the Main Zone.

To activate a command bank:

1. Press and release a command bank selection button to activate the desired command bank.

   The command matrix that begins on the next page indicates the commands remote control buttons perform when each command bank is activated.

2. Press a remote control button to send a command to the MC-12.

The MAIN MENU ▸ SETUP ▸ DISPLAYS ▸ ON-SCREEN DISPLAY menu REMOTE STATE parameter controls the remote control command bank indicator that appears on the on-screen display. When the REMOTE STATE parameter is set to ON, a command bank indicator appears in the top-right corner of the on-screen display to indicate the last command bank from which the MC-12 received a command. A "Z" appears when the Zone 2 command bank is active. An "R" appears when Record Zone command bank is active. An "S" appears when the Shift command bank is active. No letter appears when the Main Zone command bank is active. When the REMOTE STATE parameter is set to OFF, no command bank indicator appears on the on-screen display.

Note:

Remote control command bank selection buttons should not be pressed and held.

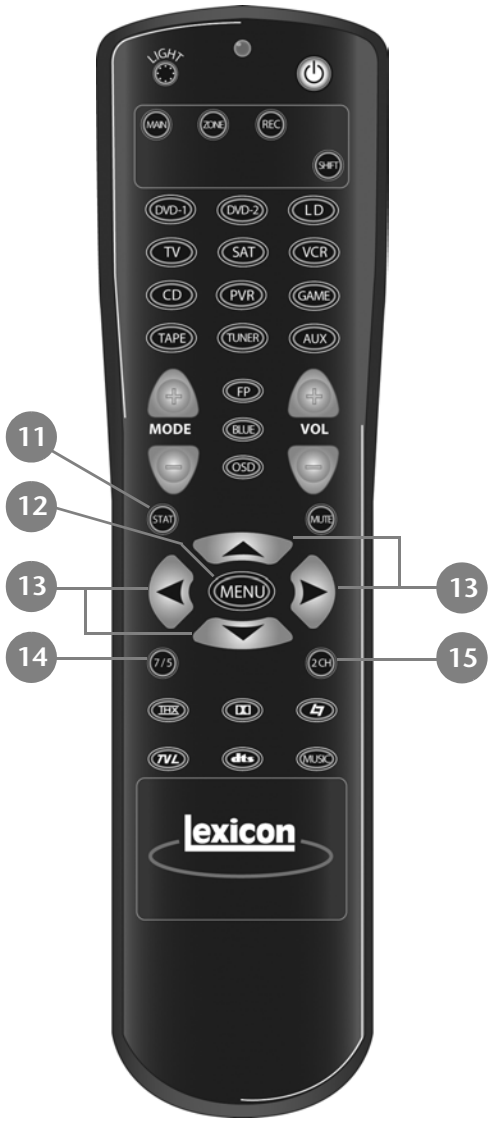
COMMAND MATRIX

The command matrix describes the commands remote control buttons perform when each command bank is active.

Button	Main Zone	Zone 2	Record Zone	Shift
1	Activates and deactivates standby mode when the MC-12 rear panel power switch is in the on position. When standby mode is activated, pressing the standby button deactivates standby mode and activates the MC-12, including all zones that were activated during the previous operating session. When standby mode is deactivated, pressing the standby button activates standby mode and deactivates the MC-12. The red front panel standby button LED lights to indicate that standby mode is activated. ***Note:*** *Power is still supplied to the MC-12 when standby mode is activated.*			
2	Activates the remote control back-light, illuminating remote control buttons making them more visible in the dark. The back-light also illuminates whenever a remote control button is pressed. Once illuminated, the back-light remains on for about 5 seconds before extinguishing.			
3	Activates the Main Zone command bank, which includes commands that control the Main Zone.			
	Activates the Zone 2 command bank, which includes commands that control the Zone 2.			
	Activates the Record Zone command bank, which includes commands that control the Record and Main Zones.			
	Activates the Shift command bank, which includes commands that control the Main Zone.			
4	Selects the DVD1 input for the Main Zone.	Selects the DVD1 input for Zone 2.	Selects the DVD1 input for the Record Zone.	Deactivates the Main Zone.
	Selects the DVD2 input for the Main Zone.	Selects the DVD2 input for Zone 2.	Selects the DVD2 input for the Record Zone.	Deactivates Zone 2.
	Selects the LD input for the Main Zone.	Selects the LD input for Zone 2.	Selects the LD input for the Record Zone.	Deactivates the Record Zone.
	Selects the TV input for the Main Zone.	Selects the TV input for Zone 2.	Selects the TV input for the Record Zone.	Sets the AUDIO CONTROLS menu LOUDNESS parameter to ON.

Button	Main Zone	Zone 2	Record Zone	Shift
4 SAT	Selects the SAT input for the Main Zone.	Selects the SAT input for Zone 2.	Selects the SAT input for the Record Zone.	Sets the AUDIO CONTROLS menu LOUDNESS parameter to OFF.
VCR	Selects the VCR input for the Main Zone.	Selects the VCR input for Zone 2.	Selects the VCR input for the Record Zone.	Reserved for possible future expansion.
CD	Selects the CD input for the Main Zone.	Selects the CD input for for Zone 2.	Selects the CD input for the Record Zone.	Increases the AUDIO CONTROLS menu BASS parameter in 0.5dB increments.
PVR	Selects the PVR input for the Main Zone.	Selects the PVR input for Zone 2.	Selects the PVR input for the Record Zone.	Increases the AUDIO CONTROLS menu TREBLE parameter in 0.5dB increments.
GAME	Selects the GAME input for the Main Zone.	Selects the GAME input for Zone 2.	Selects the GAME input for the Record Zone.	Increases the AUDIO CONTROLS menu TILT EQ parameter in 0.2dB increments.
TAPE	Selects the TAPE input for the Main Zone.	Selects the TAPE input for Zone2.	Selects the TAPE input for the Record Zone.	Decreases the AUDIO CONTROLS menu BASS parameter in 0.5dB increments.
TUNER	Selects the TUNER input for the Main Zone.	Selects the TUNER input for Zone 2.	Selects the TUNER input for the Record Zone.	Decreases the AUDIO CONTROLS menu TREBLE parameter in 0.5dB increments.
AUX	Selects the AUX input for the Main Zone.	Selects the AUX input for Zone 2.	Selects the AUX input for the Record Zone.	Decreases the AUDIO CONTROLS menu TILT EQ parameter in 0.2dB increments.

Button	Main Zone	Zone 2	Record Zone	Shift
5 FP	Toggles the FRONT PANEL DISPLAY menu STATUS parameter between ALWAYS OFF and the current setting.	Sets Zone 2 volume level to -15dB	Sets Record Zone volume level to -15dB	Sets Main Zone volume level to -15dB.
6 BLUE	Toggles the ON SCREEN DISPLAY menu BACK-GROUND parameter between ON and OFF.	Sets Zone 2 volume level to -30dB	Sets Record Zone volume level to -30dB	Sets Main Zone volume level to -30dB.
7 OSD	Toggles the ON SCREEN DISPLAY menu STATUS parameter between ALWAYS OFF and the current setting.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Sets the AUDIO CONTROL menu BASS, TREBLE, and TILT EQ parameters to +0.0dB. However, the screen displays: EQ BALANCE EQ OFF
8 MODE	Scroll to the previous or next available listening mode, with the current Main Zone input source. Scrolling occurs in the order shown on the MODE ADJUST menu.	Activates (+) and deactivates (-) the trigger output connector labeled 1 when the connector is configured for remote operation.	Activates (+) and deactivates (-) the trigger output connector labeled 2 when the connector is configured for remote operation.	Activates (+) and deactivates (-) standby mode when the MC-12 is powered on with the rear panel power switch.
9 VOL	Increases and decreases Main Zone volume level in 1dB increments.	Increases and decreases Zone 2 volume level in 1dB increments.	Increases and decreases Record Zone volume level in 1dB increments.	Increases and decreases Main Zone volume level in 1dB increments.
10 MUTE	Toggles between lowering Main Zone volume level and restoring Main Zone volume to the original level.	Toggles between full Zone 2 muting and unmuting Zone 2 volume to the original level.	Toggles between full Record Zone muting and unmuting Record Zone volume to the original level.	Toggles between full Main Zone muting and unmuting Main Zone volume to the original level.



Button	Main Zone	Zone 1	Record Zone	Shift
11 STAT	Displays the Main Zone two-line status for 2 seconds.	Displays the Zone 2 two-line status for 2 seconds.	Displays the Record Zone two-line status for 2 seconds.	Opens and closes the status menu for the current input source.
12 MENU	When a menu is open, pressing the MENU button closes the structure. When no menus are open, pressing the MENU button opens the MAIN MENU.	Centers the AUDIO CONTROLS menu ZONE2 BALANCE parameter.	Centers the AUDIO CONTROLS menu RECORD BALANCE parameter.	Centers the AUDIO CONTROLS menu Main Zone BALANCE and FADER parameters.
13 ◀ ▶	Closes the current (◀) menu or opens the menu structure and selects the highlighted menu item (▶).	Adjusts the AUDIO CONTROLS menu ZONE2 BALANCE parameter left and right.	Adjusts the AUDIO CONTROLS menu RECORD BALANCE parameter left and right.	Adjusts the AUDIO CONTROLS menu Main Zone BALANCE parameters left and right.
▲ ▼	Scroll upward and downward through menu items.	Increase and decrease subwoofer output levels applied to the current listening mode.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Adjusts the AUDIO CONTROLS menu Main Zone FADER parameters forward (▲) and backward (▼).
14 7/5	Toggles between 7- and 5-channel playback. ***NOTE:*** *Use of this button during LIVE! voids the LIVE! calibration.*	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Adjusts the MAIN ADV menu INPUT SELECT parameter, cycling through the ANALOG, DIGITAL, and AUTO settings.
15 2CH	Toggles between the current listening mode and the 2-CHANNEL listening mode.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Toggles the MAIN ADV menu ANALOG BYPASS parameter between ON and OFF.

Button	Main Zone	Zone 1	Record Zone	Shift
16 THX	Selects the THX mode family for the current input source.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Activates the 5.1 THX ULTRA2, 5.1 THX SurEX, or 5.1 THX listening mode when a 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source is present.
DD	Selects the Dolby mode family for the current input source.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Activates the Dolby Digital EX or Dolby Digital listening mode when a 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source is present.
L7	Selects the LOGIC 7 FILM mode family for the current input source.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Activates the PANORAMA listening mode.
TVL	Selects the LOGIC 7 TV mode family for the current input source.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Activates the MONO LOGIC listening mode for 2-channel sources and the 5.1 MONO LOGIC listening mode for 5.1 channel sources.
dts	Selects the DTS mode family for the current input source.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	When a DTS-ES source is present, pressing the dts button toggles the ES DECODING parameter, cycling through the AUTO, ON, and OFF settings.
MUSIC	Selects the LOGIC 7 MUSIC mode family for the current input source.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Reserved for possible future expansion.	Activates the L7 MUSIC SURR listening mode.

ABOUT THE ZONES

The MC-12 features three zones of operation: the Main Zone, Zone 2, and the Record Zone. The Main Zone controls audio and video sources in the primary listening space. Zone 2 controls audio sources in the secondary listening space. The Record Zone controls audio and video sources sent to recording devices or to a third listening space.

These zones have separate digital audio receivers and dedicated analog source selectors that allow for independent input selection in each zone. The MC-12 can process input sources in three zones at the same time. For example, the MC-12 can play a DVD in the Main Zone, while playing a CD in Zone 2, while sending satellite receiver signals to a VCR in the Record Zone.

The following are exceptions to independent zone operation:

1. When a Dolby Digital or DTS-ES source is present in the Main Zone, the same Dolby Digital or DTS-ES source can also be present in Zone 2 or the Record Zone. However, a different Dolby Digital or DTS-ES source cannot be present in Zone 2 or the Record Zone.
2. Main Zone multi-channel audio can be down-mixed in Zone 2 or the Record Zone when all of the following conditions are met:
   - A Dolby Digital or DTS-ES source is present in the Main Zone.
   - The Main Zone input is also selected in Zone 2 or the Record Zone. For example, if the DVD1 input is selected in the Main Zone, the DVD1 input must also be selected in Zone 2 or the Record Zone.
   - The MAIN MENU ▸ SETUP ▸ INPUTS ▸ INPUT SETUP menu ZONE2 IN or RECORD IN parameter is set to DMIX.
3. When the MAIN MENU ▸ SETUP ▸ INPUTS ▸ INPUT SETUP menu ZONE2 IN or RECORD IN parameter is set to ANLG, the Zone 2 or Record Zone audio output connectors are not available during 5.1a BYPASS listening mode. However, it is possible to have a 5.1-channel analog audio source present in the Main Zone and a digital audio source present in Zone 2 or the Record Zone.

TWO-LINE STATUS

The two-line status opens on the on-screen and front panel displays whenever the MC-12 detects a status change such as a new input source or listening mode. The information included on the two-line status differs depending on the zone in which the MC-12 last detected a status change. For example, the Main Zone two-line status opens when a Main Zone status change is detected.

MAIN ZONE TWO-LINE STATUS

Opens on the on-screen and front panel displays whenever the MC-12 detects a Main Zone status change. The Main Zone two-line status indicates the current input, listening mode, input source, and volume level selected in the Main Zone.

ZONE 2 TWO-LINE STATUS

Opens on the on-screen and front panel displays whenever the MC-12 detects a Zone 2 status change. The Zone 2 two-line status indicates the current input, input source, and volume level selected in Zone 2.

RECORD ZONE TWO-LINE STATUS

Opens on the on-screen and front panel displays whenever the MC-12 detects a Record Zone status change. The Record Zone two-line status indicates the current input, input source, and volume level selected in the Record Zone.

The ON-SCREEN DISPLAY menu STATUS parameter can control the length of time for which the two-line status appears on the on-screen and front panel displays. The ON-SCREEN DISPLAY menu POSITION parameter can control the vertical alignment of the two-line status on the display device screen.

Note:

When the display device is connected to a component video output connector and the ADVANCED menu COMPONENT OSD parameter is set to OFF, the display device does not show the on-screen display, including the two-line status.

STATUS MENUS

The STATUS menu contains parameters that provide information about the current input source and listening mode. STATUS menus are available for 2-channel, Dolby Digital, DTS-ES analog, digital, and LIVE! input sources.

STATUS menu parameters provide information about the current input source and listening mode. Some STATUS menus also include level meters that indicate fluctuating audio input levels. Unlike most other menus, STATUS menus cannot be opened by selecting menu options. The remote control command sequence outlined below must be executed.

To open and navigate the STATUS menu for the current input source:

1. Press and release the remote control **SHIFT** button.
2. Press and release the remote control **STAT** button.

   The first page of the STATUS menu for the current input source appears in the on-screen and front-panel displays.

   If the STATUS menu includes a second page, the PG1 indicator appears in the top-right corner of the menu. Press and release the **STAT** button again to open the second page. If the STATUS menu does not include a second page, pressing and releasing the **STAT** button again closes the menu.
3. When the desired STATUS menu page opens, press the remote control **MAIN** button, then press the ▲ or ▼ arrow button to scroll up or down through the list of available parameters.
4. Press the **STAT** button to close the STATUS menu. In some cases, you must press **STAT** twice in succession to close the STATUS menu.

Note:

STATUS menu parameters provide information about the current input source and listening mode. These parameters cannot be adjusted.

STATUS MENU DESCRIPTIONS

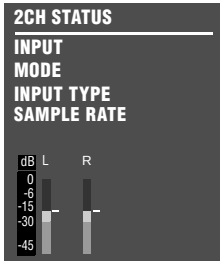
The table beneath each description lists the default and possible settings for each parameter.

2CH STATUS

Provides information about 2-channel input sources. Features L and R level meters.

Parameter	Possible Settings
INPUT	The current input
MODE	The current listening mode
INPUT TYPE	ANLG, PCM
SAMPLE RATE	44.1kHz, 48kHz, 88.2kHz, 96kHz

See "Status Menu Parameter Descriptions" on page 2-25 for detailed information.

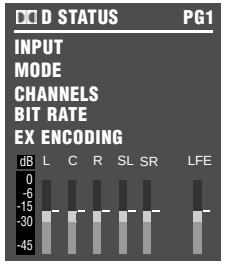


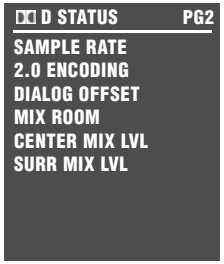
D STATUS

Provides information about Dolby Digital input sources. Features L, C, R, SL, SR and SUB level meters.

Parameter	Possible Settings
INPUT	The current input
MODE	The current listening mode
CHANNELS	3/2.1, 3/2, 3/1, 2/2, 2/1, 2/0, 1/0
BIT RATE	32 to 640kbps
EX ENCODING	MATRIX, NO
SAMPLE RATE	48kHz
2.0 ENCODING	MATRIX, NONE
DIALOG OFFSET	-27 to +4dB
MIX ROOM	SMALL, LARGE
CENTER MIX LVL	-3.0dB, -4.5dB, -6.0dB
SURR MIX LVL	+0.0dB, -3.0dB, -6.0dB

See "Status Menu Parameter Descriptions" on page 2-25 for detailed information.



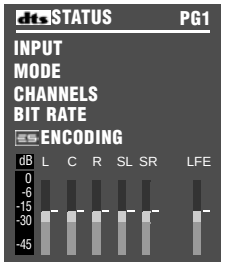


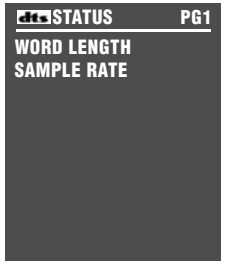
dts STATUS

Provides information about DTS-ES input sources. Includes L, C, R, SL, SR, SB and LFE level meters.

Parameter	Possible Settings
INPUT	The current input
MODE	The current listening mode
CHANNELS	3/3.1, 3/2.1
BIT RATE	754.5 to 1509.7kbps
ES ENCODING	DISCRETE, MATRIX, OFF
WORD LENGTH	16 bits, 20 bits, 24 bits
SAMPLE RATE	44.1kHz, 48kHz, 88.2kHz, 96kHz

See "Status Menu Parameter Descriptions" on page 2-25 for detailed information.





5.1 ANALOG STATUS

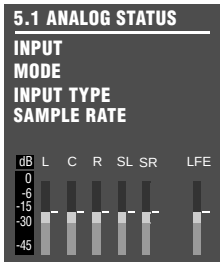
Provides information about 5.1-channel analog sources. Includes L, C, R, SL, and LFE level meters.

Parameter	Possible Settings
INPUT	The current input
MODE	The current listening mode
INPUT TYPE	ANLG
SAMPLE RATE	44.1kHz, 48kHz, 88.2kHz, 96kHz

Note:

The only possible sample rate for 5.1 analog sources is 96kHz, as they are converted to 96kHz PCM at the MC-12 input (when MAIN ADVANCED ▸ ANALOG BYPASS is set to OFF).

See "Status Menu Parameter Descriptions" on page 2-25 for detailed information.

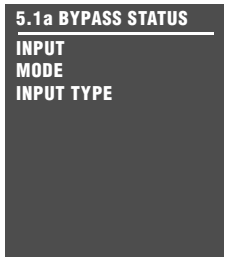


5.1a BYPASS STATUS

Provides information about 5.1-channel analog input sources when the MAIN ADV menu ANALOG BYPASS parameter is set to ON.

Parameter	Possible Settings
INPUT	The current input
MODE	5.1a BYPASS
INPUT TYPE	BYPASS

See "Status Menu Parameter Descriptions" on page 2-25 for detailed information.

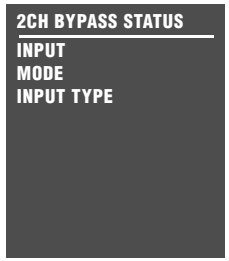


2CH BYPASS STATUS

Provides information about 2-channel analog input sources when the MAIN ADV menu ANALOG BYPASS parameter is set to ON.

Parameter	Possible Settings
INPUT	The current input
MODE	2CH BYPASS
INPUT TYPE	BYPASS

See "Status Menu Parameter Descriptions" on page 2-25 for detailed information.

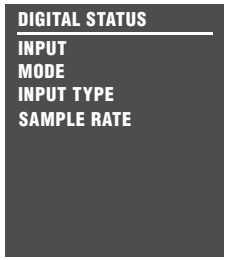


DIGITAL STATUS

Provides information about digital input sources for which a sample rate is detected, but no audio is present in the input signal.

Parameter	Possible Settings
INPUT	The current input
MODE	The current listening mode
INPUT TYPE	---
SAMPLE RATE	44.1kHz, 48kHz, 88.2kHz, 96kHz

See "Status Menu Parameter Descriptions" on page 2-25 for detailed information.

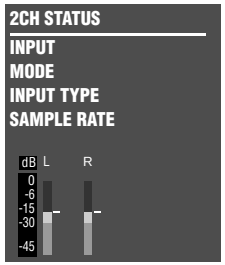


LIVE! STATUS

Provides information about LIVE! input sources.

Parameter	Possible Settings
INPUT	The current input
MODE	The current listening mode
INPUT TYPE	MIC
SAMPLE RATE	48kHz

See "Status Menu Parameter Descriptions" on page 2-25 for detailed information.



STATUS MENU PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

2.0 ENCODING MATRIX, NONE

Indicates whether or not a matrix-encoded source is detected. When the parameter setting is MATRIX, a matrix-encoded source is detected. When the parameter setting is NONE, a matrix-encoded source is not detected. The MC-12 cannot automatically detect matrix encoding in non-flagged input sources.

BIT RATE 32 to 640 kbps or 754 to 1509.7kbps

Indicates the rate at which the input signal is encoded. A higher bit rate indicates that less compression was used during the encoding process. Possible settings for Dolby Digital sources range from 32 to 640 kbps. Possible settings for DTS-ES sources range from 754 to 1509.7kbps.

CENTER MIX LVL -3.0dB, -4.5dB, -6.0dB

Indicates the relative level of the center channel that was used during the mixing process.

CHANNELS 3/3.1, 3/2.1, 3/2, 3/1, 2/2, 2/1, 2/0, 1/0

Indicates the number of channels present in the input source. The first digit indicates the number of front channels present. The digit after the slash indicates the number of surround channels present. The digit after the decimal point indicates the presence of LFE (low frequency effects) information. For example, if the CHANNELS parameter is set to 3/2.1 and LFE=ON, LFE information (the .1 channel) is sent to the LFE output. If the CHANNELS parameter is set to 3/2.1 and LFE=OFF, LFE information is sent to the subwoofer output(s) and/or speakers, depending on crossover settings.

Possible settings for Dolby Digital input sources include 3/2.1, 3/2, 3/1, 2/2, 2/1, 2/0 and 1/0. Current settings for DTS-ES input sources include 3/3.1 and 3/2.1.

DIALOG OFFSET -27 to +4dB

Indicates the dialog normalization value applied to the input signal. Dolby Digital input sources reproduce dialog at 27 decibels below full-scale (-27dBFS). When the dialog normalization value of the incoming signal is higher or lower, the DIALOG OFFSET parameter indicates the amount of adjustment the MC-12 makes to normalize dialog to -27dBFS.

ES ENCODING DISCRETE, MATRIX, OFF

Indicates whether or not a DTS-ES-encoded source is detected. When the parameter setting is DISCRETE, a discrete 6.1-channel DTS-ES source is detected. When the parameter setting is MATRIX, a 5.1-channel DTS-ES source with a surround-encoded back channel is detected. When the parameter setting is OFF, a standard DTS source with no DTS-ES encoding is detected.

EX ENCODING MATRIX, NONE

Indicates whether or not a Dolby Digital Surround EX-encoded source is detected. When the parameter setting is MATRIX, a 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source recorded with Dolby Digital Surround EX is detected. When the parameter setting is NONE, a standard 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source recorded without Dolby Digital Surround EX-encoding is detected. The MC-12 cannot automatically detect Dolby Digital Surround EX encoding in non-flagged input sources.

INPUT

Indicates the selected input (for example, DVD1).

INPUT TYPE ANLG, BYP, PCM, MIC, ---

Indicates the input source that is present. When the parameter setting is ANLG, a 2-channel analog audio source is present and the ADVANCED menu 2-CH ANLG BYP parameter is set to OFF. When the parameter setting is BYP (Bypass), a 2-channel analog audio source is present and the 2-CH ANLG BYP parameter is set to ON. When the parameter setting is PCM, a 2-channel digital audio source is present. When the parameter setting is MIC, a microphone source is present. When the parameter setting is ---, an unknown digital audio source is present.

MIX ROOM SMALL, LARGE

Indicates the size of the mixing room that was used during the mixing process. When the parameter setting is LARGE, you should set the RE-EQUALIZATION parameter to ON for THX listening modes.

MODE

Indicates the activated listening mode (e.g., L7 FILM).

SAMPLE RATE 44.1kHz, 48kHz, 88.2kHz, 96kHz

Indicates the sample rate of the input source that is present.

SURR MIX LVL +0.0dB, -3.0dB, -6.0dB

Indicates the relative surround channel level that was used during the mixing process.

WORD LENGTH 16 bits, 20 bits, 24 bits

Indicates the word length of the audio data present in the input signal.

STATUS MENU LEVEL METERS

Most STATUS menus contain level meters that indicate fluctuating input levels in the front left (L), center (C), front right (R), surround left (SL), surround right (SR), surround back (SB) and subwoofer (SUB) channels. These level meters indicate input levels for both analog and digital input sources. For example, the level meters indicate digital audio input levels when a digital audio source is present.

Different combinations of level meters appear on each STATUS menu, depending on the source that is present. The SB level meter appears when a 6.1-channel source is present, or when a 5.1-channel source is present and the ES DECODING parameter is set to ON.

Level meters appear in combinations of green, yellow and red when the on-screen display is configured for a blue-screen background. Green indicates low levels, yellow indicates normal levels, and red indicates high levels and the onset of overload. Level meters appear in white when the on-screen display is not configured for a blue screen background.

3

Setup

Setup 3-2

Input Setup 3-4

- Changing Input Names 3-5
- Assigning Audio & Video Input Connectors 3-7
- Selecting Preferred Listening Modes 3-12
- Configuring Advanced Input Settings 3-15
- INPUT SELECT Parameter Settings 3-17
- ZONE2 & RECORD IN Parameter Settings 3-19

Speaker Setup 3-22

- Setting Crossover Points 3-22

Calibrating Speaker Distances & Output Levels 3-33

- Speaker Calibration Parameters 3-33
- Automatic Calibration 3-35
- Manual Calibration 3-52

Rear-Panel Configuration 3-59

Display Setup 3-61

- On-Screen Display 3-63
- Front-Panel Display 3-65

Volume-Control Setup 3-66

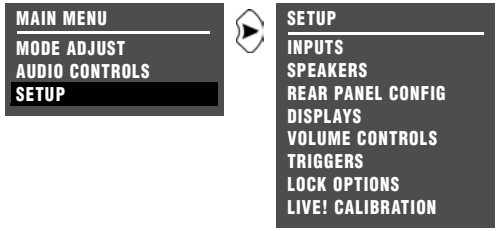
Trigger Setup 3-68

Lock Options 3-70

LIVE! Calibration 3-71

SETUP

Selecting SETUP from the MAIN MENU opens the SETUP menu.



INPUTS

SETUP ▸ INPUTS

Prompts for an input selection (e.g., DVD1), and opens the corresponding INPUT SETUP menu. When the menu is open, you can change input names, assign audio and video input connectors, select preferred listening modes, and configure Main Zone, Zone 2 and Record Zone settings. See "INPUT SETUP" on page 3-4 for more information.

SPEAKERS

SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS

Opens the SPEAKER SETUP menu, to configure the Main Zone audio output connectors for the desired speaker setup. See "SPEAKER SETUP" on page 3-22 for more information.

REAR PANEL CONFIG

SETUP ▸ REAR PANEL CONFIG

Opens the REAR PANEL CONFIG menu, to configure the analog audio input connectors as eight stereo connectors or as five stereo and one 5.1-channel connectors. See "REAR PANEL CONFIG" on page 3-59 for more information.

DISPLAYS

SETUP ▸ DISPLAYS

Opens the DISPLAY SETUP menu, to customize the on-screen and front-panel displays, restore audio/video synchronization, and create and activate a custom unit name. See "DISPLAY SETUP" on page 3-61 for more information.

VOLUME CONTROLS

SETUP ▸ VOLUME CONTROLS

Opens the VOLUME CONTROL SETUP menu, to configure Main Zone, Zone 2, and Record Zone volume levels. See "VOLUME CONTROL SETUP" on page 3-66 for more information.

TRIGGERS

SETUP ▸ TRIGGERS

Prompts the selection of a desired trigger output connector (1 or 2) and opens the corresponding TRIGGER SETUP menu for configuration of remote or program operation. See "TRIGGER SETUP" on page 3-68 for more information.

LOCK OPTIONS

SETUP ▶ **LOCK OPTIONS**

Opens the LOCK OPTIONS menu, to protect MODE ADJUST, AUDIO CONTROLS and SETUP menu branch settings from accidental changes. See “LOCK OPTIONS” on page 3-70 for more information.

LIVE! CALIBRATION

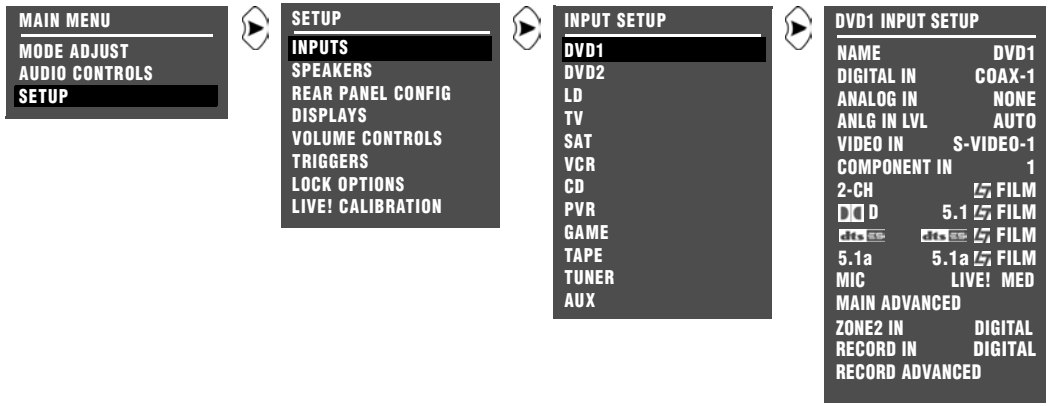
SETUP ▶ **LIVE! CALIBRATION**

Opens the LIVE! CALIBRATION menu, to perform the necessary calibration before using the LIVE! modes. See “LIVE! Calibration” on page 3-71 for more information.

INPUT SETUP

SETUP ▶ **INPUTS** ▶ **(INPUT)** ▶ **INPUT SETUP**

Selecting the SETUP menu INPUTS option prompts the selection of a desired input (e.g., DVD1). Selecting an input opens the corresponding INPUT SETUP menu, which changes input names, assigns audio and video input connectors, selects preferred listening modes, and configures advanced Main Zone, Zone 2, and Record Zone settings.



The DVD1 INPUT SETUP menu is shown here as an example, and will continue to be shown as an example throughout this section. Whenever it appears, any other INPUT SETUP menu can be substituted. Likewise, whenever the DVD1 input appears as a step in a menu path, any other input can be substituted.

All INPUT SETUP menus are shown in the Appendix on page A-6. The parameters on the left side of the INPUT SETUP menus are identical regardless of which input is selected. The parameter settings on the right side are adjustable. The INPUT SETUP menus shown in the Appendix indicate factory-default parameter settings for each input.

CHANGING INPUT NAMES

Selecting the INPUT SETUP menu NAME parameter opens the INPUT NAME menu, to customize or restore the factory-default name of the selected input. Factory-default input names correspond to front-panel and remote control input selection button labels.

EDIT INPUT NAME

SETUP ▸ INPUTS ▸ DVD1 ▸ NAME ▸ EDIT INPUT NAME

Opens the EDIT INPUT NAME editing menu, to customize the name of the selected input. Custom input names can include up to eight characters.

To customize the name of the selected input:

1. Follow the EDIT INPUT NAME menu path to open the EDIT INPUT NAME editing menu.
2. When the editing menu opens, the current input name appears on the second line. Use the remote control ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons to change the character above the cursor (^).
3. When the character you want is displayed, press the ▸ arrow button to advance to the next character space. The cursor will automatically wrap to the first character space when the last character space is passed.

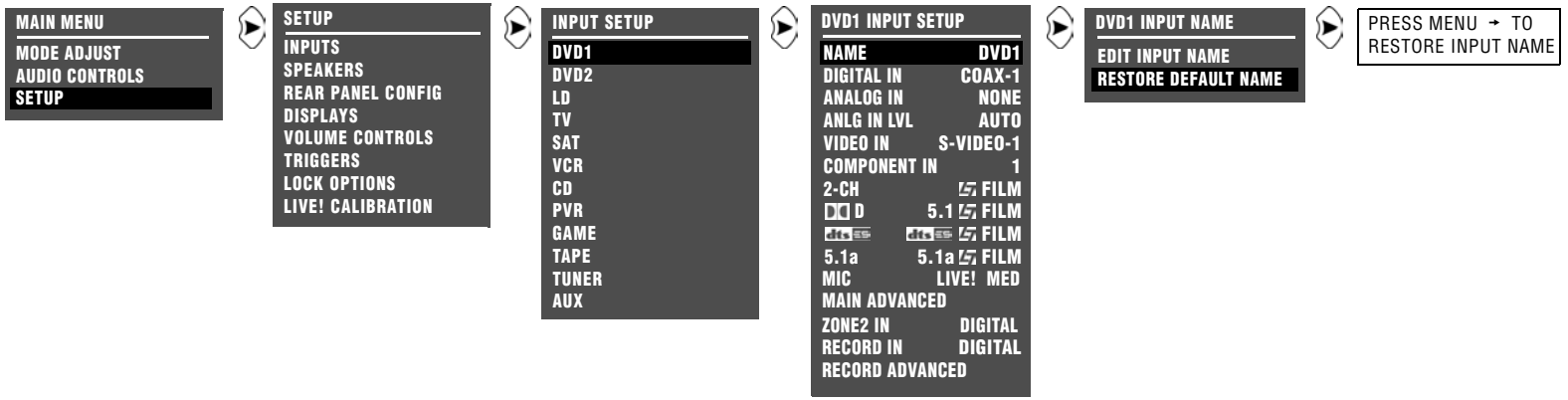
CHANGING INPUT NAMES *(continued)*

Note:

Pressing the ◂ arrow button closes the menu and returns to the INPUT NAME menu.

4. Repeat step 3 to enter all characters in the new name. When the input name you want is displayed, press the ◂ arrow button to close the menu and return to the INPUT NAME menu.

The custom input name appears in the on-screen and front-panel displays. Both the custom and factory-default input names appear in the INPUT SETUP menu. The custom input name appears against the left margin of the on-screen display, and the factory-default input name appears in parentheses against the right margin.



RESTORE DEFAULT NAME

SETUP ▸ INPUTS ▸ DVD1 ▸ NAME ▸ RESTORE DEFAULT NAME

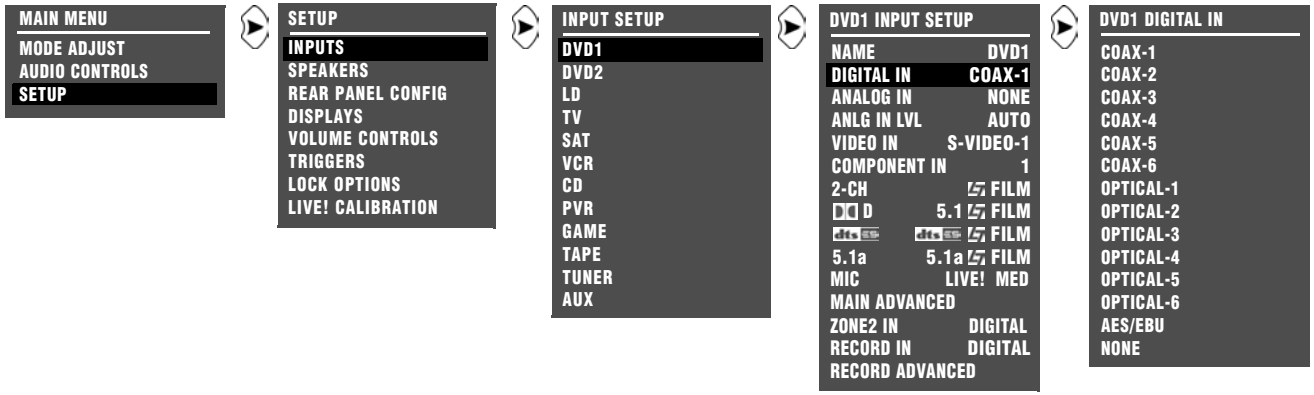
Restores the factory-default name of the selected input. Factory-default input names correspond to front-panel and remote control input selection button labels.

To restore the factory-default name of the selected input:

1. Follow the RESTORE DEFAULT NAME menu path to open the INPUT NAME menu.
2. When the INPUT NAME menu opens, press the remote control ▲ or ▼ buttons to highlight the RESTORE DEFAULT NAME option.
3. Press the ▸ arrow button to select this option. The message: "PRESS MENU → TO RESTORE INPUT NAME" appears in the on-screen and front-panel displays.
4. Press the ▸ button to restore the factory-default name and close the message. (Press the ◂ button to close the message without restoring the factory-default name of the selected input.)

ASSIGNING AUDIO & VIDEO INPUT CONNECTORS

The MC-12 has 12 inputs, each of which can be assigned to any (depending on compatibility) of its 13 digital audio, 8 analog audio, 5 composite video, 8 S-video, or 4 component video input connectors.



The table below indicates the INPUT SETUP menu parameters that can be used to assign audio and video input connectors. The ANLG IN LVL parameter can be used to adjust 2-channel and 5.1 analog audio input levels for the selected input.

Parameter	Possible Settings
DIGITAL IN	COAX-1 to 6, OPTICAL-1 to 6, AES/EBU, NONE
ANALOG IN	ANALOG-1 to 8, 5.1 ANLG (6-8), LIVE!, NONE
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO, -18dB to +12dB
VIDEO IN	COMPOSITE-1 to 5, S-VIDEO-1 to 8, NONE
COMPONENT IN	COMPONENT-1 to 4

Note:

The digital audio input connectors are compatible with PCM (44.1, 48, 88.2, and 96kHz), Dolby Digital and DTS(-ES) sources. The digital audio input connectors are not compatible with MPEG or MP3 sources.

DIGITAL IN COAX-1 TO 6, OPTICAL-1 TO 6, AES/EBU, NONE

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ DIGITAL IN

Opens the DIGITAL IN menu, to assign a digital audio input connector for the selected input. A digital audio input connector must be assigned if no analog audio input connector is assigned.

When no analog audio input connector is assigned, the MC-12 automatically sets the:

- MAIN ADV menu INPUT SELECT parameter to DIGITAL
- INPUT SELECT menu ZONE2 IN parameter to DIGITAL
- INPUT SELECT menu RECORD IN parameter to DIGITAL

ASSIGNING AUDIO & VIDEO INPUT CONNECTORS *(continued)*

ANALOG IN ANALOG-1 TO 8, 5.1 ANLG (6-8), LIVE!, NONE

SETUP ▸ **INPUTS** ▸ **DVD1** ▸ **ANALOG IN**

Opens the ANALOG IN menu, to assign an analog audio input connector for the selected input. An analog audio input connector must be assigned if no digital audio input connector is assigned.

The appearance of the ANALOG IN menu depends on the configuration of the analog audio input connectors.

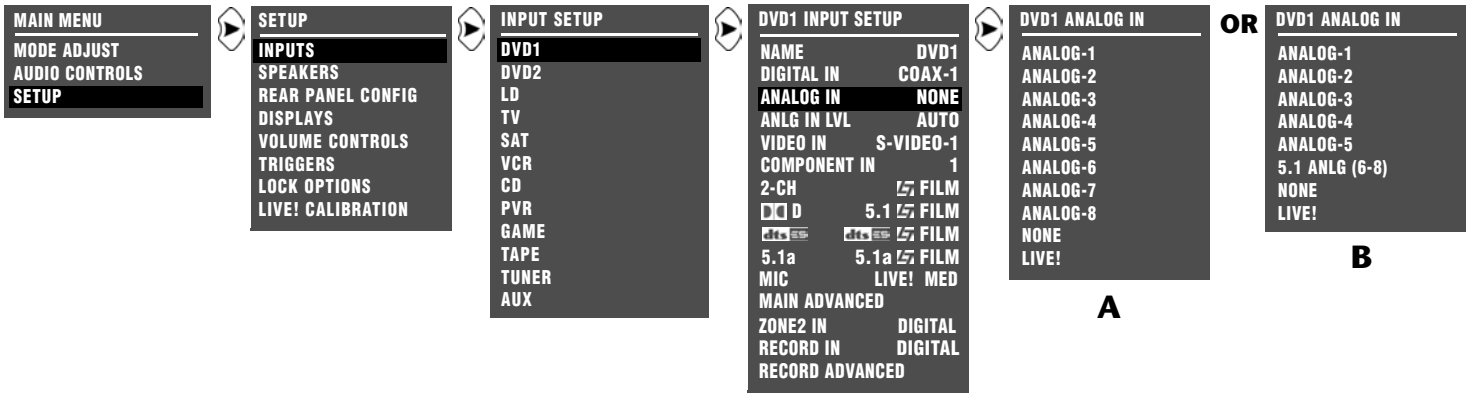
- The ANALOG IN menu (A below) appears when the REAR PANEL CONFIG menu 8 STEREO INPUTS option is selected.
- The ANALOG IN menu (B below) appears when the REAR PANEL CONFIG menu 5 STEREO & 5.1 ANLG option is selected.

When no digital audio input connector is assigned, the MC-12 automatically sets the:

- MAIN ADV menu INPUT SELECT parameter to ANALOG
- INPUT SELECT menu ZONE2 IN parameter to ANLG
- INPUT SELECT menu RECORD IN parameter to ANLG

Note:

LIVE! cannot be selected until LIVE! CALIBRATION is run. When the ANALOG IN selection is LIVE!, no other analog inputs (1-8) or digital inputs can be selected for that input.



ANLG IN LVL

AUTO, -18 to +12 dB

SETUP ▸ INPUTS ▸ DVD1 ▸ ANGL IN LVL

Opens the ANLG IN LVL menu, to adjust the 2-channel (and 5.1-channel when the MAIN ADVANCED ▸ ANALOG BYPASS parameter is set to OFF) analog audio input levels for the selected input. Analog audio sources have a wide range of levels. To compensate, the MC-12 allows independent input level adjustment of each stereo analog audio input connector. The input level of the 5.1-channel analog audio input connector is only adjustable when the ANALOG BYPASS parameter is set to OFF.

Parameter	Possible Settings
AUTO	ON, OFF
MANUAL	-18 to +12dB
AUTO GAIN*	-18 to +12dB

** This parameter cannot be adjusted.*

Note:

Adjustments made on the ANLG IN LVL menu are applied to the stereo analog audio input connector assigned for the selected input. When another stereo analog audio input connector is assigned, these adjustments are automatically applied to the new connector.

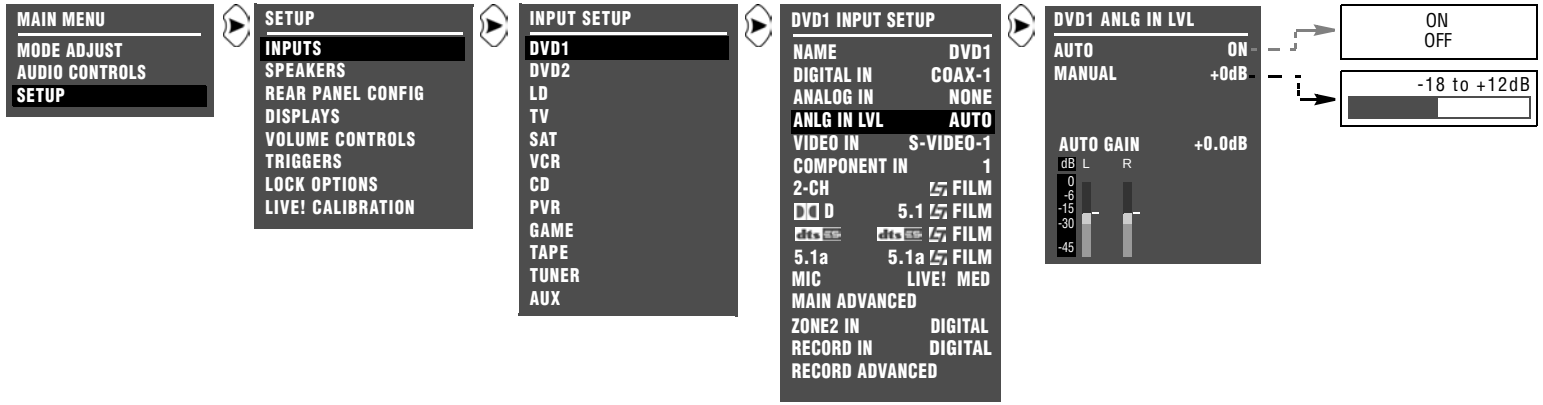
AUTO

ON, OFF

SETUP ▸ INPUTS ▸ DVD1 ▸ ANGL IN LVL ▸ AUTO

Provides automatic adjustment of 2-channel (and 5.1-channel when the MAIN ADVANCED ▸ ANALOG BYPASS parameter is set to OFF) analog audio input levels. When set to ON, the input levels are automatically monitored and optimized. When the input signal is too high, the input levels are quickly decreased to avoid overload. When the input signal is too low, the input levels are slowly increased to maximize the signal-to-noise ratio and dynamic range.

When set to OFF, the 2-channel and 5.1 analog audio input levels are not automatically monitored and optimized. Instead, input levels must be adjusted with the ANLG IN LVL MANUAL parameter.



ASSIGNING AUDIO & VIDEO INPUT CONNECTORS *(continued)*

MANUAL -18 to +12 dB

SETUP ▷ INPUTS ▷ DVD1 ▷ ANGL IN LVL ▷ MANUAL

Provides manual adjustment of 2-channel (and 5.1-channel when the MAIN ADVANCED ▸ ANALOG BYPASS parameter is set to OFF) analog audio input levels. Lower levels cause more noise, while higher levels pose a risk of overload distortion. When manual adjustments are made, the MC-12 automatically sets the ANLG IN LVL menu AUTO parameter to OFF, deactivating automatic input level adjustment. Manual input level adjustments are retained when the AUTO parameter is ON.

Note:

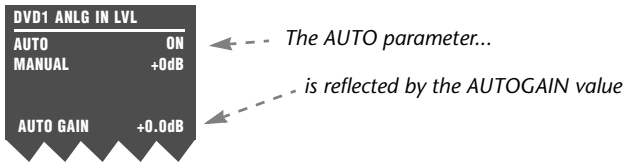
When the AUTO parameter is ON, the MC-12 will not make adjustments that exceed the ANLG IN LVL menu MANUAL parameter setting.

AUTO GAIN

SETUP ▷ INPUTS ▷ DVD1 ▷ ANGL IN LVL ▷ AUTO GAIN

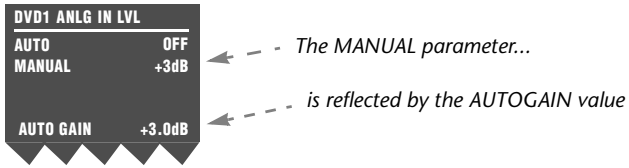
Indicates the current amount of input level adjustment for the selected 2-channel (and 5.1-channel when the MAIN ADVANCED ▸ ANALOG BYPASS parameter is set to OFF) analog audio input connector. This parameter cannot be directly adjusted. When the ANLG IN LVL menu AUTO parameter is ON, the AUTO GAIN parameter indicates the amount of automatic input level adjustment.

When AUTO GAIN is set to ON



When the AUTO parameter is OFF, the AUTO GAIN parameter indicates the amount of input level adjustment as set by the MANUAL parameter.

When AUTO GAIN is set to OFF



When the AUTO parameter is ON, the AUTO GAIN parameter continues to indicate the amount of manual input level adjustment until automatic adjustments have been made.

LEVEL METERS

Indicate fluctuating input levels in the front left (L) and front right (R) channels for the selected input. Meters are also present for center (C), side left (SL), side right (SR), and sub (LFE) when the input is set up for 5.1-analog. Like the STATUS menu level meters, ANLG IN LVL menu level meters indicate input levels for both analog and digital audio sources. However, ANLG IN LVL menu input level adjustments only affect 2-channel (or 5.1-channel sources when the MAIN ADVANCED ▸ ANALOG BYPASS parameter is set to OFF) analog audio sources.

Level meters appear in combinations of green, yellow and red when the on-screen display is configured for a blue-screen background. Green indicates low levels; yellow indicates normal levels; and red indicates the onset of overload. Occasional flashes from yellow into red are normal peak indicators. Level meters appear in white when the on-screen display is not configured for a blue-screen background.

VIDEO IN COMPOSITE-1 TO 5, S-VIDEO-1 TO 8, NONE

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ VIDEO IN

Opens the VIDEO IN menu, to assign a composite or S-video input connector for the selected input.

Note:

- *Composite video output connectors are available only when a composite video source is present.*
- *S-video output connectors are available when an S-video or Composite source is present.*

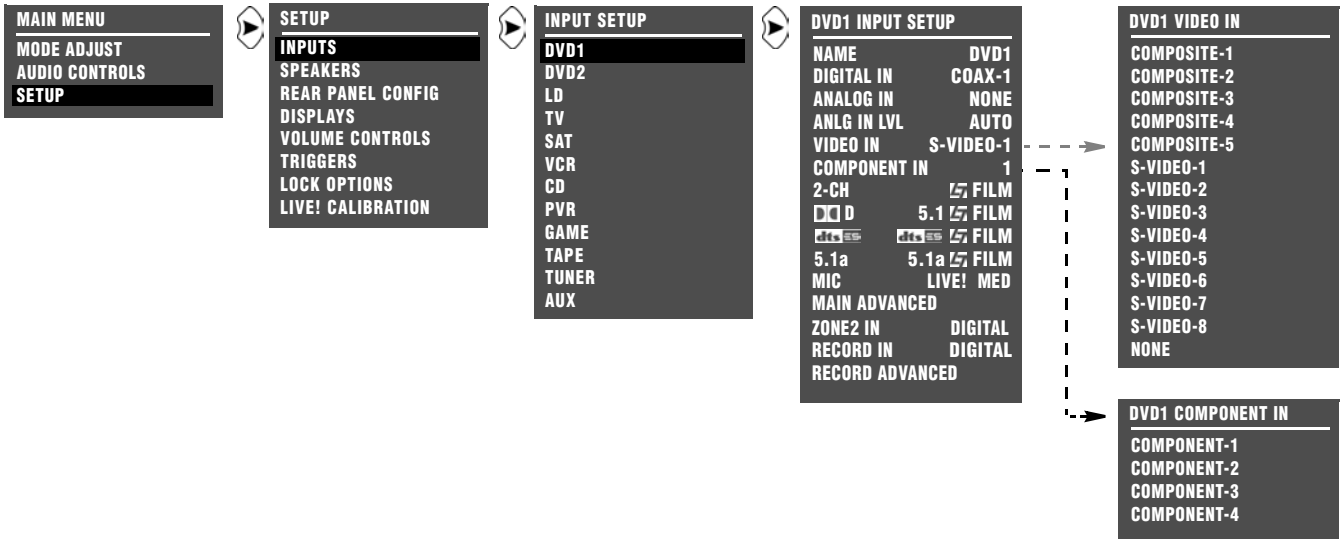
COMPONENT IN COMPONENT 1 to 4

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ COMPONENT IN

Opens the COMPONENT IN menu, to assign a component video input connector for the selected input.

Note:

Component video output connectors are only available when a component video source is present.



SELECTING PREFERRED LISTENING MODES

The MC-12 allows the selection of five preferred listening modes for each Main Zone input: one listening mode each for 2-channel, Dolby Digital, DTS(-ES), 5.1-channel analog, and MIC (LIVE!) sources. The table below indicates the INPUT SETUP menu parameters that can be used to select preferred listening modes.

Preferred Listening Mode Selection Parameters

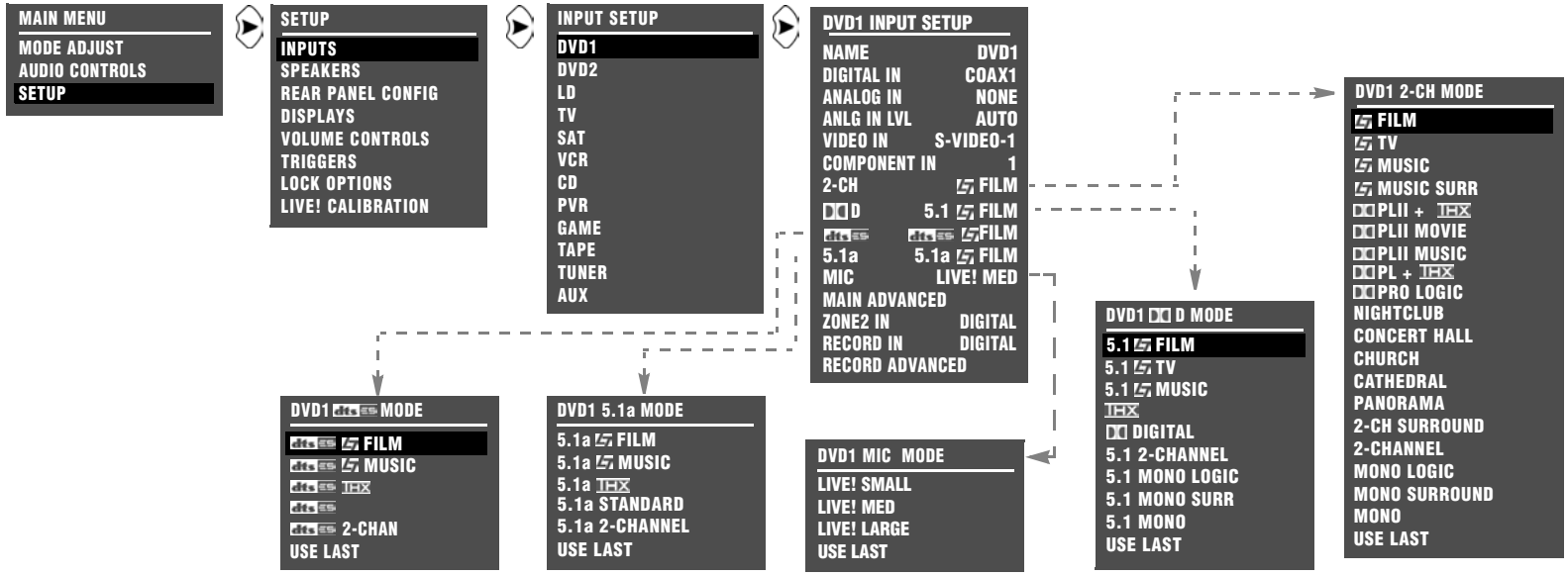
2-CH	Selects a preferred listening mode for 2-channel sources
DD D	Selects a preferred listening mode for Dolby Digital sources
DTS-ES	Selects a preferred listening mode for DTS(-ES) sources
5.1a	Selects a preferred listening mode for 5.1-channel analog sources
MIC	Selects a preferred listening mode for microphone source (LIVE!)

When a preferred listening mode is selected, it is activated whenever a new input is selected or an appropriate input source is present. (In the menus at the bottom of the page, the INPUT SETUP menu has been modified for the following examples.)

The following example describes when a preferred listening mode is activated:

If the DVD1 input is selected and a 2-channel source is present, the L7 FILM listening mode is activated. If a 5.1-channel analog source is present, the 5.1a L7 FILM listening mode is activated. If a DTS(-ES) source is present, the DTS(-ES) L7 FILM listening mode is activated.

Menus showing DVD1 parameters selected as preferred listening modes.



2-CH

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ 2-CH

Opens the 2-CH MODE menu, which selects a preferred listening mode for 2-channel input sources. The MC-12 activates the preferred listening mode whenever a new input is selected or a new 2-channel source is present. When set to USE LAST, the MC-12 automatically uses the listening mode that was activated the last time a 2-channel source was present.

Note:

The remote control 2 CH button toggles between the 2-CHANNEL listening mode and the previous listening mode, and ignores the USE LAST setting. Instead, it uses the listening mode (for example, L7 FILM) that was activated before the 2-CHANNEL listening mode.

When the 2-CH parameter is set to USE LAST:

- A DTS Neo:6 listening mode is used if a DTS Neo:6 listening mode was activated the last time a 2-channel source was present. However, DTS Neo:6 listening modes cannot be selected as the preferred listening mode for 2-channel sources.
- The MC-12 requires the presence of a 44.1kHz or 48kHz PCM digital source to activate a DTS Neo:6 listening mode. The DTS Neo:6 listening modes are not available with 88.2kHz or 96kHz, Dolby Digital or analog sources.
- A Dolby PLIIx listening mode is used if a Dolby PLIIx listening mode was activated the last time a 2-channel source was present. However, the Dolby PLIIx listening modes cannot be selected as the preferred listening mode for 2-channel sources.

D

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ D

Opens the Dolby DIGITAL MODE menu, to select a preferred listening mode for Dolby Digital input sources. The MC-12 automatically activates the preferred listening mode whenever a new input is selected or a new Dolby Digital source is present.

When the D parameter is set to USE LAST:

- The MC-12 automatically uses the Dolby Digital listening mode that was activated the last time a Dolby Digital source was present.
- If the 5.1 THX MUSIC listening mode was activated the last time a Dolby Digital source was present, then the 5.1 THX MUSIC listening mode is used. Normally, the 5.1 THX MUSIC listening mode cannot be selected as the preferred listening mode for Dolby Digital sources.

SELECTING PREFERRED LISTENING MODES *(continued)*

dts ES

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ dts ES

Opens the DTS(-ES) MODE menu, which selects a preferred listening mode for DTS(-ES) input sources. The MC-12 automatically activates the preferred listening mode whenever a new input is selected or a new DTS(-ES) source is present.

When the DTS(-ES) parameter is set to USE LAST:

- The MC-12 uses the listening mode that was activated the last time a DTS(-ES) source was present.
- The DTS THX MUSIC listening mode is used if this listening mode was activated the last time a DTS(-ES) source was present. Normally, the DTS THX MUSIC listening mode cannot be selected as the preferred listening mode for DTS(-ES) sources.

5.1a

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ 5.1a

Opens the 5.1a MODE menu, which selects a preferred listening mode for 5.1-channel analog input sources. The MC-12 automatically activates the preferred listening mode whenever a new input is selected or a new 5.1-channel analog source is present.

When the 5.1a parameter is set to USE LAST:

- The MC-12 uses the listening mode that was activated the last time a 5.1-channel analog source was present.
- The 5.1a THX MUSIC listening mode is used if this listening mode was activated the last time a 5.1-channel analog source was present. Normally, the 5.1a THX MUSIC listening mode cannot be selected as the preferred listening mode for 5.1-channel analog sources.

MIC

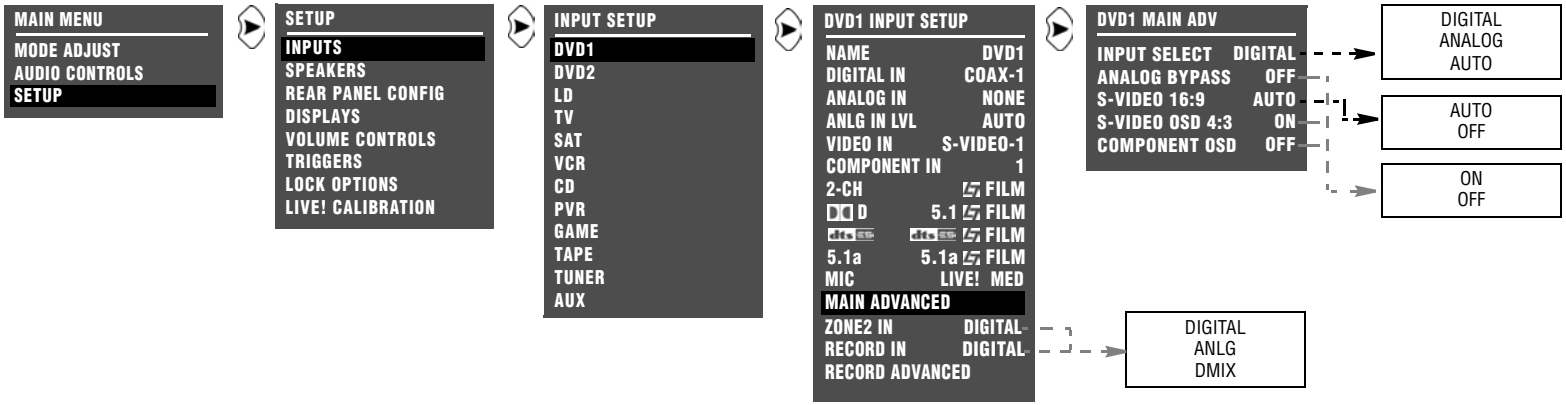
SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ MIC

Opens the MIC MODE menu, which selects a preferred listening mode for the LIVE! source. The MC-12 automatically activates the preferred listening mode when the ANALOG IN selection is LIVE!

When the MIC parameter is set to USE LAST:

- The MC-12 uses the listening mode that was activated the last time a MIC source was present.

CONFIGURING ADVANCED INPUT SETTINGS



The MC-12 allows the assignment of one digital and one analog audio input connector for each input. The table below indicates the INPUT SETUP menu parameters that can be used to control the interaction of these connectors, as well as other advanced Main Zone, Zone 2, and Record Zone input settings.

Parameter	Possible Settings
MAIN ADVANCED	Refer to the next column
ZONE2 IN	DIGITAL, ANLG, DMIX
RECORD IN	DIGITAL, ANLG, DMIX
RECORD ADVANCED	Refer to 3-20

MAIN ADVANCED

SETUP ▶ **INPUTS** ▶ **DVD1** ▶ **MAIN ADVANCED**

The MAIN ADV menu controls the interaction of the digital and analog audio input connectors assigned to the current Main Zone input, and other advanced Main Zone input settings.

The parameters on the left side of the MAIN ADV menu are identical regardless of which input is selected. The parameter settings on the right side are adjustable. The MAIN ADV menu shown in the Appendix indicates factory-default parameter settings for each input.

Parameter	Possible Settings
INPUT SELECT	DIGITAL, ANALOG, AUTO
ANALOG BYPASS	ON, OFF
S-VIDEO 16:9	AUTO, OFF
S-VIDEO OSD 4:3	ON, OFF
COMPONENT OSD	ON, OFF

CONFIGURING ADVANCED ZONE SETTINGS *(continued)*

INPUT SELECT DIGITAL, ANALOG, AUTO

SETUP ▸ INPUTS ▸ DVD1 ▸ MAIN ADVANCED ▸ INPUT SELECT

Controls the interaction of the digital and analog audio input connectors assigned to the current Main Zone input. The table on the next page describes INPUT SELECT parameter settings.

Note:

When the Shift button activates the shift command bank, the 7/5 button adjusts the INPUT SELECT parameter by cycling through the DIGITAL, ANALOG, and AUTO settings.

ANALOG BYPASS ON, OFF

SETUP ▸ INPUTS ▸ DVD1 ▸ MAIN ADVANCED ▸ ANALOG BYPASS

Forces analog sources to bypass A/D conversion and internal processing. When ON, analog input signals pass directly to the Main Zone audio output connectors.

- When a 2-channel analog source is present, analog input signals pass directly to the Front L/R output connectors.
- When a 5.1-channel analog source is present, analog input signals pass to the Main Zone audio output connectors as indicated in the tables on pages 2-7 and 3-59.
- When LIVE! is the selected analog input, the MAIN ADVANCED ▸ INPUT SELECT parameter is forced to ANALOG and ANALOG BYPASS is disabled.
- When OFF, the MC-12 passes analog input signals through A/D conversion and internal processing before passing them to the Main Zone audio output connectors. This allows analog sources to use bass management, speaker crossovers, speaker distance calibration, and tone controls.

Note:

When the Shift command bank is activated, pressing the 2CH button toggles ANALOG BYPASS between ON and OFF.

S-VIDEO 16:9 AUTO, OFF

SETUP ▸ INPUTS ▸ DVD1 ▸ MAIN ADVANCED ▸ S-VIDEO 16:9

Controls the passage of anamorphic trigger signals present in some video sources. When set to AUTO, the MC-12 allows anamorphic video input signals to pass through the S-video switcher, enabling compatible display devices to automatically switch between anamorphic and non-anamorphic display modes.

When OFF, the MC-12 prevents anamorphic video input signals from passing through the S-video switcher, preventing compatible display devices from automatically switching between anamorphic and non-anamorphic display modes.

INPUT SELECT PARAMETER SETTINGS

DIGITAL	ANALOG	AUTO
The MC-12 sends the digital audio from the assigned input to the Main Zone audio output connectors. The assigned analog audio input connector is ignored. The digital audio input connectors are compatible with PCM (44.1, 48, 88.2, and 96kHz), Dolby Digital, and DTS(-ES) sources. The digital audio input connectors are not compatible with MPEG or MP3 sources. **Note the following:** • The MC-12 automatically sets the INPUT SELECT parameter to DIGITAL when no analog audio input connector is assigned. • The INPUT SETUP ▸ DIGITAL IN parameter can assign a digital audio input connector for the selected input.	The MC-12 sends the analog audio from the assigned input to the Main Zone audio output connectors. The assigned digital audio input connector is ignored. **Note the following:** • The MC-12 automatically sets the INPUT SELECT parameter to ANALOG when no digital audio input connector is assigned. • The INPUT SETUP ▸ ANALOG IN parameter can assign an analog audio input connector for the selected input. • When LIVE! is the selected analog input, the MAIN ADVANCED ▸ INPUT SELECT parameter is forced to ANALOG and ANALOG BYPASS is disabled.	The MC-12 toggles between sending digital or analog audio input to the Main Zone audio output connectors based on the input source that is present. **Example:** • The MC-12 selects the assigned digital audio input when a compatible digital source is present. The MC-12 does not select the assigned analog audio input when a compatible digital source is present. • The MC-12 selects the assigned analog audio input connector when no compatible digital source is present. • The MC-12 selects the assigned analog connector if no digital source is present. • The MC-12 selects the assigned analog audio input connector when an analog source, such as an SACD, is present. **Note the following:** • The MC-12 automatically sets the MAIN ADVANCED ▸ INPUT SELECT parameter to AUTO when both digital and analog audio input connectors are assigned. • Use the AUTO setting for components, such as DVD/SACD players, that generate both digital and analog output signals.

CONFIGURING ADVANCED ZONE SETTINGS *(continued)*

S-VIDEO OSD 4:3 ON, OFF

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ MAIN ADVANCED ▶ S-VIDEO OSD 4:3

Controls the on-screen display aspect ratio when the display device is connected to a Main Zone S-Video output connector. Aspect ratio refers to the size of the picture or the display device screen. A 4:3 aspect ratio is almost square. A 16:9 aspect ratio, often referred to as widescreen, is almost twice as wide as it is high.

When ON, the on-screen display appears in a 4:3 aspect ratio regardless of the incoming video input signal. When OFF, the on-screen display appears in the same aspect ratio as the incoming video input signal.

The on-screen display appears horizontally stretched across the display device screen when all of the following conditions are present:

- The S-VIDEO OSD (4:3) parameter is OFF.
- An anamorphic video input signal is present.
- A 16:9 display device (widescreen) is connected to an S-video output connector.

COMPONENT OSD ON, OFF

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ MAIN ADVANCED ▶ COMPONENT OSD

Controls the appearance of the on-screen display when the display device is connected to the component video output connector. When ON, the display device shows the on-screen display as a 480i video signal on a full blue screen background. To minimize viewing distractions, the two-line status does not appear in the on-screen display. When OFF, the display device does not show the on-screen display, including the two-line status.

Note:

When the ON-SCREEN DISPLAY menu BACKGROUND parameter is OFF, the display device using the component video output connector will not show the on-screen display.

ZONE2 IN & RECORD IN DIGITAL, ANLG, DMIX

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ ZONE2 IN OR RECORD IN

Controls the interaction of the digital and analog audio input connectors assigned to the current Zone 2 and Record Zone inputs. The table of the next page describes ZONE2 and RECORD IN parameter settings.

CAUTION!

When the ZONE2 or RECORD IN parameter is set to DIGITAL or ANLG, the MC-12 recognizes some DTS-encoded sources as audio signals (not data signals) and outputs loud digital noise from the Zone 2 or Record Zone audio output connectors.

ZONE2 & RECORD IN PARAMETER SETTINGS

DIGITAL	ANLG (Analog)	DMIX (Downmix)
The MC-12 passes digital audio from the the assigned input to the Zone 2 or Record Zone audio output connectors. The assigned analog audio input is ignored. Zones can be independently monitored. **Note the following:** • The MC-12 passes digital sources to all Zone 2 or Record Zone audio output connectors. • The MC-12 passes digital input signals directly to the Record Zone digital audio output connectors. The MC-12 sends digital input signals through D/A conversion before passing them to the Zone 2 or Record Zone analog audio output connectors. • When no analog audio input is assigned, ZONE2 IN and RECORD IN are set to DIGITAL. • The INPUT SETUP menu DIGITAL IN parameter can be used to assign a digital audio input connector for the selected input.	The MC-12 passes analog audio from the the assigned input to the Zone 2 or Record Zone audio output connectors. The assigned digital audio input is ignored. Zones can be independently monitored. **Note the following:** • The MC-12 passes analog sources to all Zone 2 or Record Zone audio output connectors. • The MC-12 passes analog input signals directly to the Zone 2 or Record Zone analog audio output connectors. The MC-12 converts analog input signals to digital (A/D conversion) before passing them to the Record Zone digital audio output connectors. • When no digital audio input is assigned, ZONE2 IN and RECORD IN are set to ANALOG. • The INPUT SETUP menu ANALOG IN parameter can be used to assign an analog audio input connector for the selected input.	The MC-12 passes a downmixed version of Main Zone audio to the Zone 2 or Record Zone audio output connectors. Zones cannot be independently monitored. Downmixing is possible when all of the following conditions are met: • The same input is selected in both Main Zone and Zone 2 or in both Main Zone and Record Zone. Otherwise, the Zone 2 or Record Zone audio output connectors will mute. • The 5.1a BYPASS listening mode is not activated. **Note the following:** • A downmix of all channels is sent to Zone 2. • Main Zone listening mode activation affects the Zone 2 and Record Zone audio output connectors. For example, when the MONO listening mode is activated, the Zone 2 and Record Zone audio output connectors will generate mono output signals. • Set the ZONE2 IN and RECORD IN parameters to DMIX when using a playback device (DVD player) that does not have built-in Dolby Digital or DTS(-ES) decoding, and the recording device is a VCR or Personal Video Recorder (PVR). • The MC-12 automatically downmixes multi-channel sources (except LOGIC 7 FILM and MUSIC sources) to stereo output signals for listening and recording. Also, 5.1-channel analog sources can be downmixed when the MAIN ADVANCED ▸ ANALOG BYPASS parameter is set to OFF. Upon playback, these downmixes are compatible with matrix decoders, but sound best through a Logic 7 listening mode.

CONFIGURING ADVANCED ZONE SETTINGS *(continued)*

RECORD ADVANCED

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ RECORD ADVANCED

Opens the RECORD ADV menu, which configures advanced Record Zone input settings.

The parameters on the left side of the RECORD ADV menu are identical regardless of the selected input. The parameter settings on the right side are adjustable. The RECORD ADV menu shown in the Appendix indicates factory-default parameter settings.

Parameter	Possible Settings
ANLG IN LVL	-18 to +12dB
DIGITAL BYPASS	ON, OFF
DIG OUT RATE	INPUT, 96kHz, 88.2kHz, 48kHz, 44.1kHz
RECORD	BLOCKED, ENABLED

ANLG IN LVL -18 to +12dB

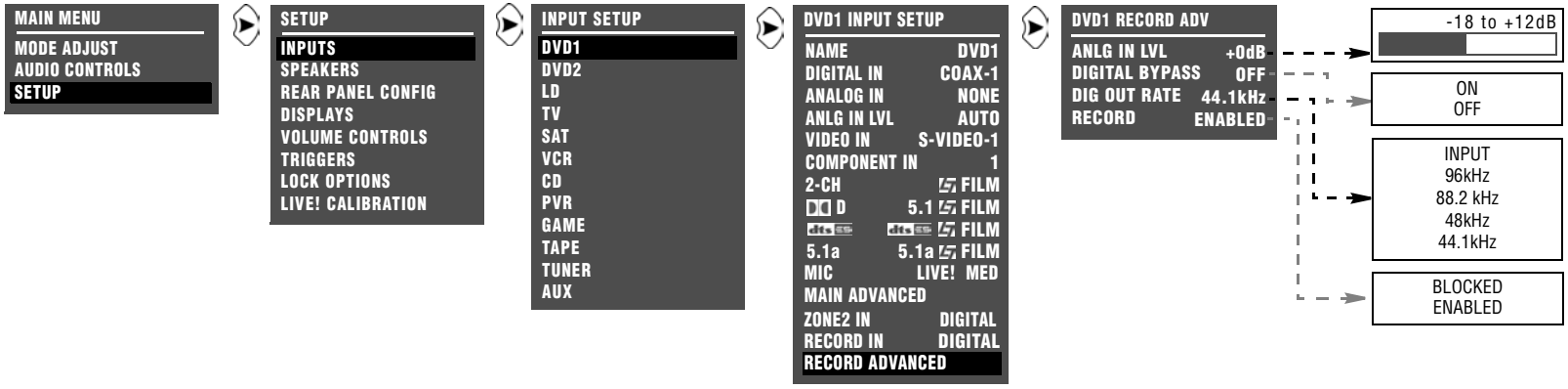
SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ RECORD ADVANCED ▶ ANLG IN LVL

Allows adjustment of analog audio input levels for input signals sent to the Record Zone digital audio output connectors. Adjustments are applied to input signals before passing them to the Record Zone digital audio output connectors. This parameter can be adjusted when an input source is present to prevent the internal A/D converter from overloading.

DIGITAL BYPASS ON, OFF

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ RECORD ADVANCED ▶ DIGITAL BYPASS

Allows direct digital recording (digital sources bypass sample rate conversion). When ON, digital input signals pass directly to the Record Zone digital audio output connectors, preserving the original input signal sample rate. When OFF, the sample rate of the digital signals is converted, then passed to the Record Zone digital audio output connectors. The sample rate of the output signal then matches the sample rate of the recording device. DIG OUT RATE parameter settings have no effect when the DIGITAL BYPASS parameter is set to ON.



DIG OUT RATE INPUT, 44.1kHz, 48kHz, 88.2kHz, 96kHz

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ RECORD ADVANCED ▶ DIG OUT RATE

Controls the sample rate of digital and analog input signals sent to the Record Zone digital audio output connectors. When INPUT is selected, the sample rate of input signals is not converted. Therefore, the original sample rate is maintained from the input connectors through to the Record Zone digital audio output connectors.

When a value is selected, input signals pass through the selected value of sample rate conversion, then pass to the Record Zone digital audio output connectors. Set the DIG OUT RATE parameter to the appropriate value when using a recording format that operates on a single sample rate, such as CD-R format (44.1kHz).

RECORD BLOCKED, ENABLED

SETUP ▶ INPUTS ▶ DVD1 ▶ RECORD ADVANCED ▶ RECORD

Prevents recording device feedback loops. When BLOCKED is selected, the MC-12 blocks the Record Zone audio output connectors to prevent feedback loops. However, video input signals are still passed to the Record Zone video output connectors. When ENABLED is selected, audio and video input signals are passed to the Record Zone audio and video output connectors.

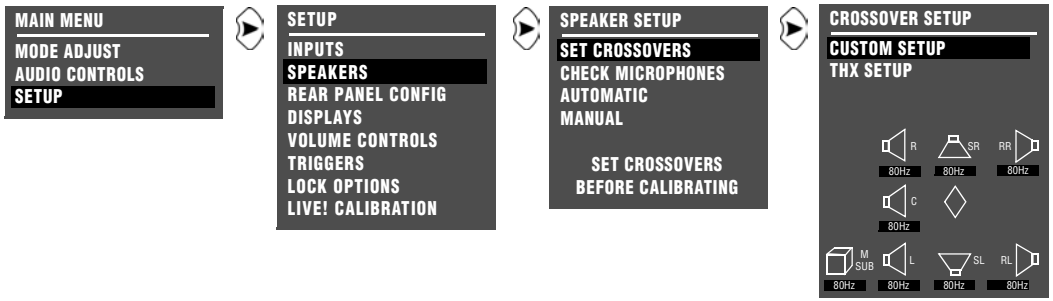
SPEAKER SETUP

SETUP ▶ **SPEAKERS**

Selecting the SETUP menu SPEAKERS option opens the SPEAKER SETUP menu, which configures the Main Zone audio output connectors for the desired speaker setup. The Main Zone includes 10 unbalanced audio output connectors labeled Front L/R, Center, LFE, Subwoofer L/R, Side L/R, and Rear L/R. Two additional audio output connectors labeled Aux L/R are provided for future expansion.

Note:

The MC-12 Balanced also includes 10 balanced Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Front L/R, Center, LFE, Subwoofer L/R, Side L/R, and Rear L/R. Two additional audio output connectors labeled Aux L/R are provided for future expansion.



SETTING CROSSOVER POINTS

SETUP ▶ **SPEAKERS** ▶ **SET CROSSOVERS**

Selecting the SPEAKER SETUP menu SET CROSSOVERS option opens the CROSSOVER SETUP menu, which configures a custom or THX speaker setup.

Note:

It is important to set crossover points before calibrating output levels or LIVE! Otherwise, setting crossover points afterwards could invalidate calibrated output levels and will invalidate the LIVE! calibration.

CUSTOM SPEAKER SETUPS

SETUP ▸ **SPEAKERS** ▸ **SET CROSSOVERS** ▸ **CUSTOM SETUP**

Selecting the CROSSOVER SETUP menu CUSTOM SETUP option opens the CUSTOM SETUP menu, which assigns independent crossover points for each Main Zone audio output connector. Crossover points can be selected in 10Hz increments within a 30 to 120Hz range. The graphs shown on the next page indicate the frequency response of each crossover point.

To configure a custom speaker setup:

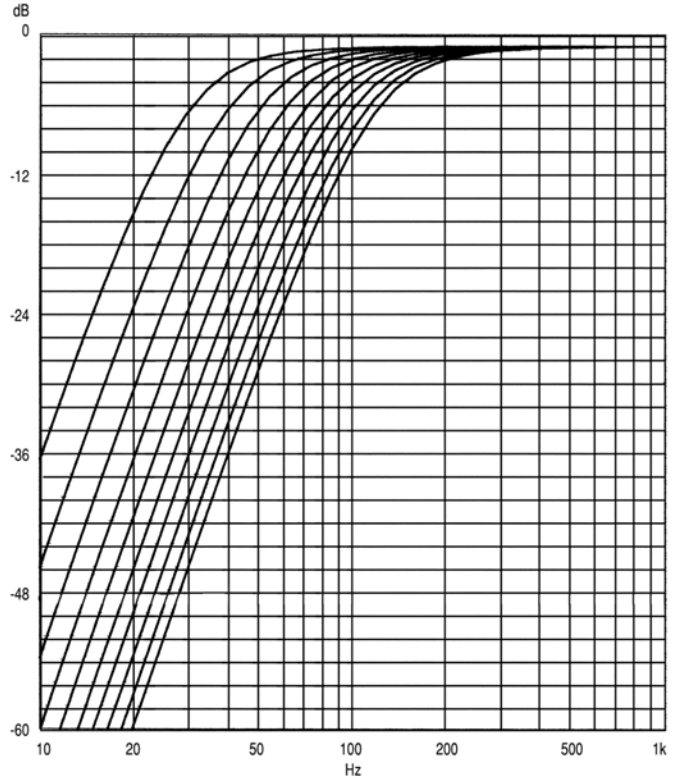
- Select the crossover point closest to the low frequency rating of the associated speakers. For example, set the FRONT L/R parameter to the crossover point closest to the low frequency rating of the front speakers.
- Select the subwoofer crossover point equal to the lowest crossover point of any of the other speakers. For example, if CUSTOM SETUP menu parameters are set as shown above, set the SUB XOVER parameter to 80Hz – the lowest crossover point of the other speakers.

In a custom setup, low frequencies are generally redirected from speakers with the highest crossover points to speakers with the lowest crossover points. Signals lower than the lowest crossover point are redirected to the subwoofer. If the lowest crossover point is FULL, low frequency signals, excluding LFE information, are not redirected to the subwoofer.

Low frequencies between the Subwoofer L/R and any or all of the other speaker channels can be duplicated. To do this, select the FULL + SUB crossover setting for the front, center, side or rear speakers. Making this selection can result in excessive bass.

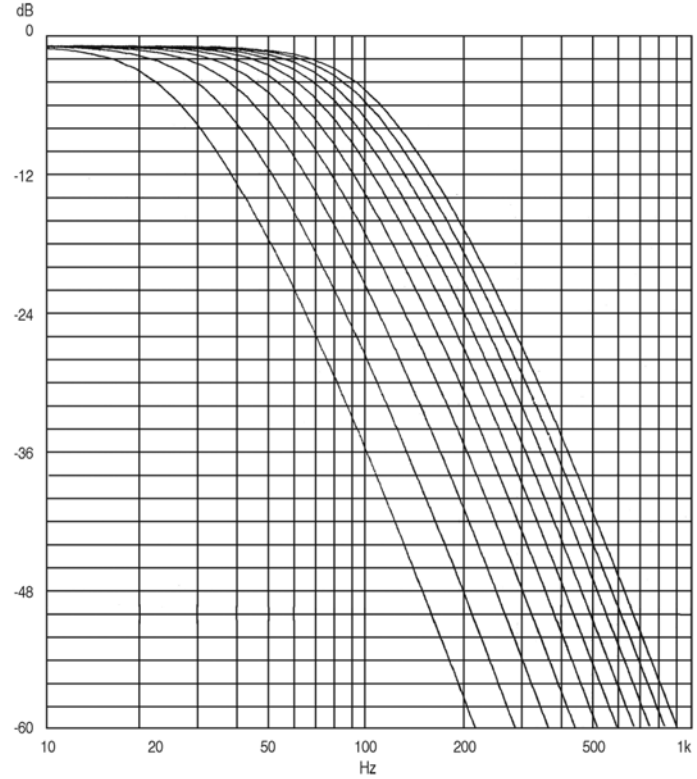
SETTING CROSSOVER POINTS *(continued)*

High-pass Filter

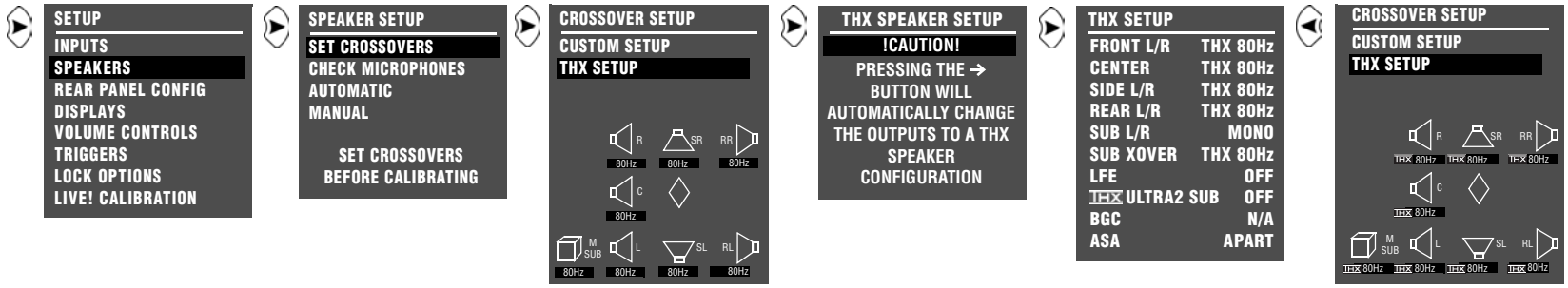


High-pass filters attenuate low frequencies at 24dB per octave. The curves in the graph above indicate the frequency response of each crossover setting. From left to right, the curves represent crossover settings from 30Hz to 120Hz. The graph above does not show the THX 80Hz crossover point, which is 12dB per octave.

Low-pass Filter



Low-pass filters attenuate high frequencies at 24dB per octave. The curves in the graph above indicate the frequency response of each crossover setting. From left to right, the curves represent crossover settings from 30Hz to 120Hz.



THX SPEAKER SETUPS

SETUP ▸ **SPEAKERS** ▸ **SET CROSSOVERS** ▸ **THX SETUP** ▸ ▸

Selecting CROSSOVER SETUP ▸ THX SETUP opens the THX SPEAKER SETUP screen, which indicates that pressing the ▸ arrow button will automatically configure the Main Zone audio output connectors for a THX speaker setup. You should use THX-certified speakers in a THX speaker setup.

When the THX SPEAKER SETUP screen opens:

- Press the ▸ arrow button to configure the Main Zone audio output connectors for a THX speaker setup. The THX SETUP menu will open on the on-screen display.
- Press the ◂ arrow button to close the message without configuring the Main Zone audio output connectors for a THX speaker setup.

When a THX speaker setup is selected, the MC-12 applies a THX 80Hz crossover point with a 12dB-per-octave filter to the Front L/R, Center, Side L/R, and Rear L/R output connectors. The MC-12 applies a THX 80Hz crossover point with a 24dB-per-octave filter to the Subwoofer L/R output connectors.

Notes:

- *A THX speaker setup is not required to activate THX listening modes.*
- *In the THX SETUP menu, only the REAR L/R, THX ULTRA2 SUB, BGC, and ASA parameters can be changed.*

SPEAKER SETUP PARAMETERS

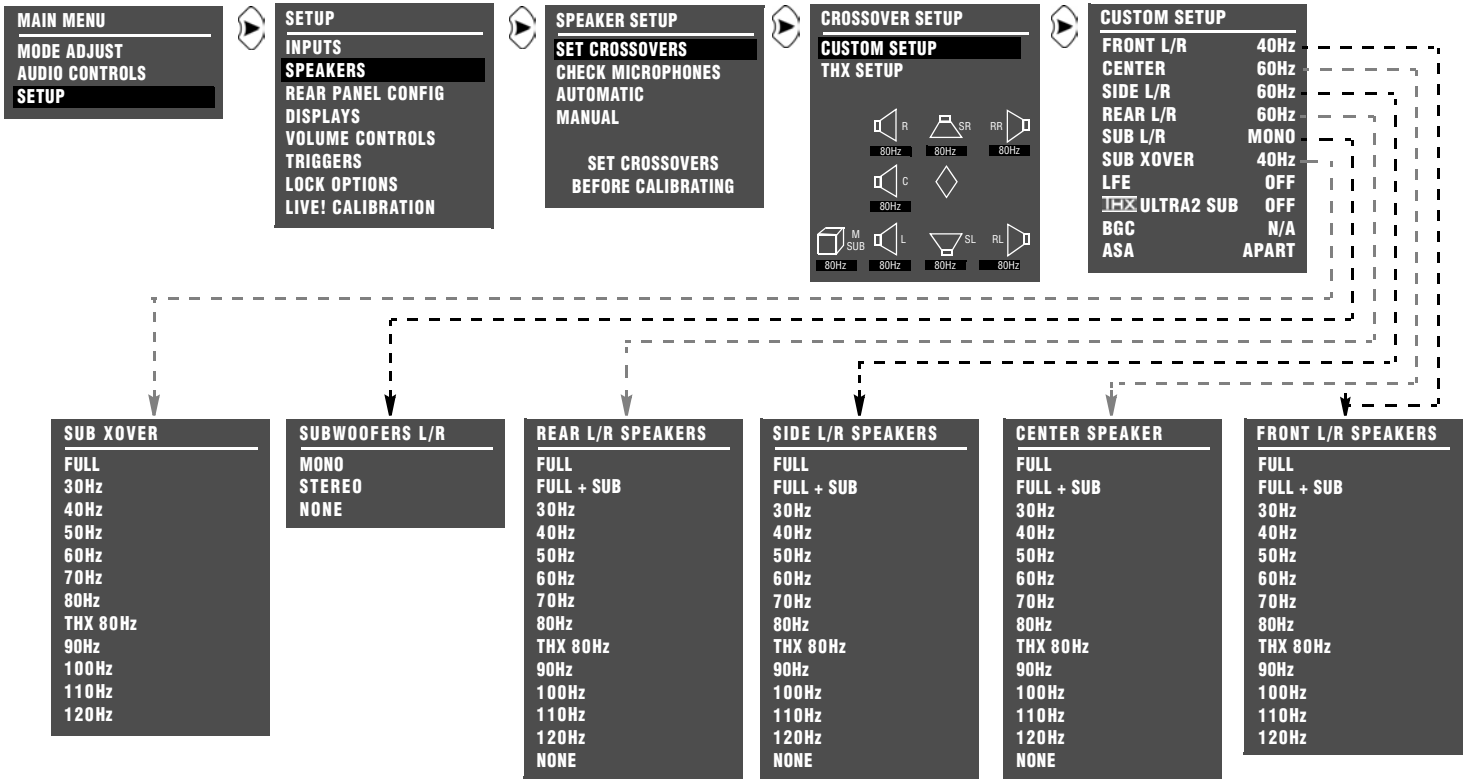
SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ CUSTOM SETUP ▸ *or* SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ THX SETUP ▸▸

The table below indicates the speaker setup parameters for configuring the Main Zone audio output connectors for the desired speaker setup. These parameters are available on the CUSTOM SETUP and THX SETUP menus.

Speaker setup parameters perform the same function regardless of the selected speaker setup. When a parameter setting is adjusted on one menu, the corresponding parameter setting is automatically adjusted on the other menu. For example, when a THX speaker setup is selected, the speaker setup parameters on the CUSTOM SETUP menu are set to THX 80Hz.

Parameter	CUSTOM SETUP Menu		THX SETUP Menu	
	Default Setting	Possible Setting	Default Setting	Possible Settings
FRONT L/R*	80Hz	FULL, FULL + SUB, 30Hz to 120Hz, THX 80Hz	THX 80Hz	THX 80Hz
CENTER*	80Hz	FULL, FULL + SUB, 30Hz to 120Hz, THX 80Hz, NONE	THX 80Hz	THX 80Hz
SIDE L/R*	80Hz	FULL, FULL + SUB, 30Hz to 120Hz, THX 80Hz, NONE	THX 80Hz	THX 80Hz
REAR L/R	80Hz	FULL, FULL + SUB, 30Hz to 120Hz, THX 80Hz, NONE	THX 80Hz	THX 80Hz, NONE
SUB L/R*	MONO	MONO, STEREO, NONE	MONO	MONO
SUB XOVER*	80Hz	FULL, 30Hz to 120Hz, THX 80Hz	THX 80Hz	THX 80Hz
LFE*	OFF	ON, OFF	ON	ON
THX ULTRA2 SUB	OFF	ON, OFF	OFF	ON, OFF
BGC	N/A†	ON, OFF	N/A†	ON, OFF
ASA	APART	APART, CLOSE, TOGETHER	APART	APART, CLOSE, TOGETHER

** These parameters cannot be adjusted on the THX SETUP menu.*
† When the THX ULTRA2 SUB parameter is set to OFF, the BGC parameter is not available (N/A).



FRONT L/R FULL, FULL + SUB, 30Hz to 120Hz, THX 80Hz

SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ CUSTOM SETUP ▸ FRONT L/R

Assigns a crossover point for the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled FRONT L/R when a custom speaker setup is selected. Opens the FRONT L/R SPEAKERS menu to select a crossover point for the FRONT L/R output connectors.

- Select **FULL** to send a full-range signal to the front speakers. Otherwise, select the crossover point closest to the low frequency rating of the front speakers.
- Select **FULL + SUB** to send a full-range signal to the front speakers and duplicate bass frequencies to the SUB L/R outputs. (The set crossover point of the SUB L/R parameter determines the upper range of duplicate bass.) Selecting the FULL + SUB option can result in excessive bass.

SETTING CROSSOVER POINTS *(continued)*

SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ THX SETUP ▸▸

When a THX speaker setup is selected, a THX 80Hz crossover point is applied to the FRONT L/R output connectors, and the FRONT L/R parameter cannot be adjusted.

CENTER FULL, FULL + SUB, 30Hz to 120Hz, THX 80Hz, NONE

SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ CUSTOM SETUP ▸ CENTER

Assigns a crossover point for the Main Zone audio output connector labeled CENTER when a custom speaker setup is selected. Opens the CENTER SPEAKER menu to select a crossover point for the CENTER output connector.

- Select **FULL** to send a full-range signal to the center speaker. Otherwise, select the crossover point closest to the low frequency rating of the center speaker.
- Select **FULL + SUB** to send a full-range signal to the center speaker and duplicate bass frequencies to the SUB L/R outputs. (The set crossover point of the SUB L/R parameter determines the upper range of duplicate bass.) Selecting the FULL + SUB option can result in excessive bass.
- Select **NONE** when the speaker setup does not include a center speaker. The MC-12 then redirects center channel signals to the Front L/R output connectors – unless the 5.1a BYPASS listening mode is activated. In this case, configure the speaker setup with the associated DVD-A/SACD player to redirect center channel signals.

SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ THX SETUP ▸▸

When a THX speaker setup is selected, a THX 80Hz crossover point is applied to the Center output connector, and the CENTER parameter cannot be adjusted.

SIDE L/R FULL, FULL + SUB, 30Hz to 120Hz, THX 80Hz, NONE

SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ CUSTOM SETUP ▸ SIDE L/R

Assigns a crossover point for the Main Zone audio output connector labeled SIDE L/R when a custom speaker setup is selected. Opens the SIDE L/R SPEAKERS menu to select a crossover point for the SIDE L/R output connectors.

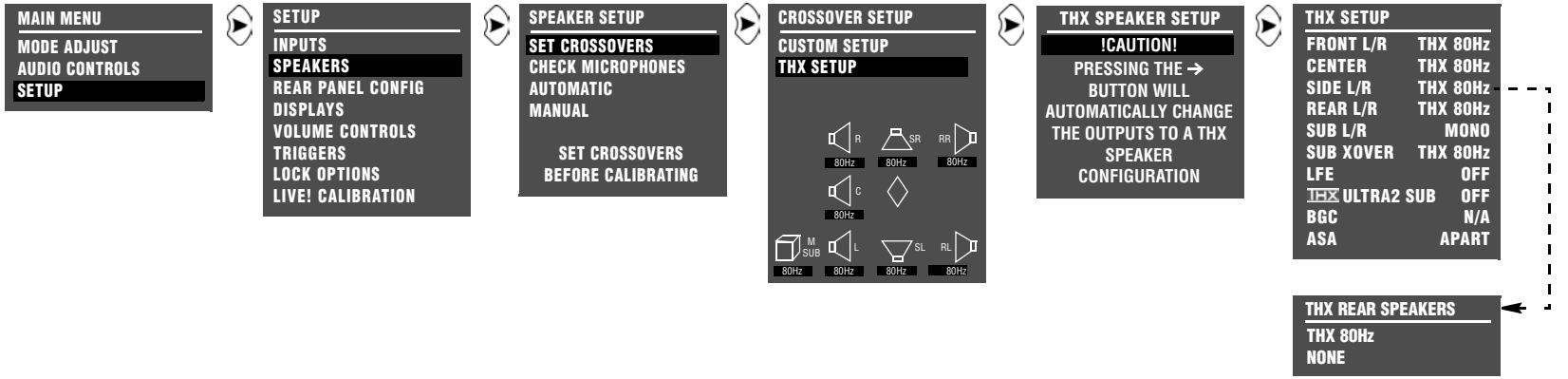
- Select **FULL** to send a full-range signal to the side speakers. Otherwise, select the crossover point closest to the low frequency rating of the side speakers.
- Select **FULL + SUB** to send a full-range signal to the side speakers and duplicate bass frequencies to the SUB L/R outputs. (The set crossover point of the SUB L/R parameter determines the upper range of duplicate bass.) Selecting the FULL + SUB option can result in excessive bass.
- Select **NONE** when the speaker setup does not include side speakers. The MC-12 will redirect side channel signals to the Rear L/R output connectors. If the REAR L/R parameter is also set to NONE, the MC-12 will redirect surround channel signals to the Front L/R output connectors.

Note:

When the SIDE L/R parameter is set to NONE, Dolby Digital Surround EX, THX Ultra2, THX Surround EX, DTS(-ES) decoding, the ASA parameter, and PLIIx modes are not available.

SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ THX SETUP ▸▸

When a THX speaker setup is selected, a THX 80Hz crossover point is applied to the SIDE L/R output connectors, and the SIDE L/R parameter cannot be adjusted.



REAR L/R FULL, FULL + SUB, 30Hz to 120Hz, THX 80Hz, NONE

SETUP ▶ **SPEAKERS** ▶ **SET CROSSOVERS** ▶ **CUSTOM SETUP** ▶ **REAR L/R**

Assigns a crossover point for the Main Zone audio output connector labeled REAR L/R when a custom speaker setup is selected. Opens the REAR L/R SPEAKERS menu to select a crossover point for the REAR L/R output connectors.

- Select **FULL** to send a full-range signal to the rear speakers. Otherwise, select the crossover point closest to the low frequency rating of the rear speakers.
- Select **FULL + SUB** to send a full-range signal to the rear speakers and duplicate bass frequencies to the SUB L/R outputs. (The set crossover point of the SUB L/R parameter determines the upper range of duplicate bass.) Selecting the FULL + SUB option can result in excessive bass.
- Select **NONE** when the speaker setup does not include rear speakers. The MC-12 then redirects rear channel signals to the Side L/R output connectors. If the SIDE L/R parameter is also set to NONE, surround channel signals are sent to the Front L/R output connectors.

SETUP ▶ **SPEAKERS** ▶ **SET CROSSOVERS** ▶ **THX SETUP** ▶ ▶ **REAR L/R**

When a THX speaker setup is selected, the REAR L/R parameter opens the THX REAR SPEAKERS menu shown above, to activate and deactivate the REAR L/R output connectors.

- Select **THX 80Hz** to activate and configure the Rear L/R output connectors for a 7.1-channel THX speaker setup.
- Select **NONE** to deactivate the Rear L/R output connectors, configuring the Main Zone audio output connectors for a 5.1-channel THX speaker setup.

Note:

When the REAR L/R parameter is set to NONE, Dolby Digital Surround EX, THX Ultra2, THX Surround EX, and PLIIx modes, DTS(-ES) decoding, and the ASA parameter are not available.

SETTING CROSSOVER POINTS *(continued)*

SUB L/R MONO, STEREO, NONE

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ SET CROSSOVERS ▶ CUSTOM SETUP ▶ SUB L/R

Configures the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled SUBWOOFER L/R for a speaker setup that includes one, two, or no subwoofer(s).

When a custom speaker setup is selected, the SUB L/R parameter opens the SUBWOOFERS L/R menu, to select a configuration for the SUBWOOFER L/R output connectors.

- Select **MONO** if the speaker setup includes one subwoofer. The MC-12 sends low frequency front, center, and surround channel signals to the SUBWOOFER L/R output connectors.
- Select **STEREO** if the speaker setup includes two subwoofers. The MC-12 sends low frequency front left, center, and surround left channel signals to the SUBWOOFER L output connector and low frequency front right, center, and surround right channel signals to the SUBWOOFER R output connector.
- Select **NONE** if the speaker setup does not include a subwoofer. The MC-12 redirects low frequency signals to the speakers with the lowest crossover points – unless the 5.1a BYPASS listening mode is activated. In this instance, configure the speaker setup with the associated DVD-A/SACD player to redirect low frequency signals.

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ SET CROSSOVERS ▶ THX SETUP ▶▶

When a THX speaker setup is selected, the SUBWOOFER L/R output connectors are configured for a speaker setup that includes one subwoofer, and the SUB L/R parameter cannot be adjusted.

SUB XOVER FULL, 30 to 120Hz, THX 80Hz, NONE

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ SET CROSSOVERS ▶ CUSTOM SETUP ▶ SUB XOVER

Assigns a crossover point for the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled SUBWOOFER L/R when a custom speaker setup is selected. Opens the SUB XOVER menu to select a crossover point for the SUBWOOFER L/R output connectors.

Select **FULL** to send a full-range signal to the subwoofer(s). Otherwise, select the crossover point equal to the lowest crossover point of the other speakers.

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ SET CROSSOVERS ▶ THX SETUP ▶▶

When a THX speaker setup is selected, a THX 80Hz crossover point is applied to the SUBWOOFER L/R output connectors, and the SUB L/R parameter cannot be adjusted.

LFE ON, OFF

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ SET CROSSOVERS ▶ CUSTOM SETUP ▶ LFE

Activates and deactivates the Main Zone audio output connector labeled LFE when a custom speaker setup is selected.

When a custom speaker setup is selected:

- Select **ON** to activate the LFE output connector. LFE information is sent to the LFE output connector.
- Select **OFF** to deactivate the LFE output connector. LFE signals are redirected to the SUBWOOFER L/R output connectors. If the SUB L/R parameter is set to OFF, LFE signals are redirected to the speakers with the lowest crossover point.

SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ THX SETUP ▸▸

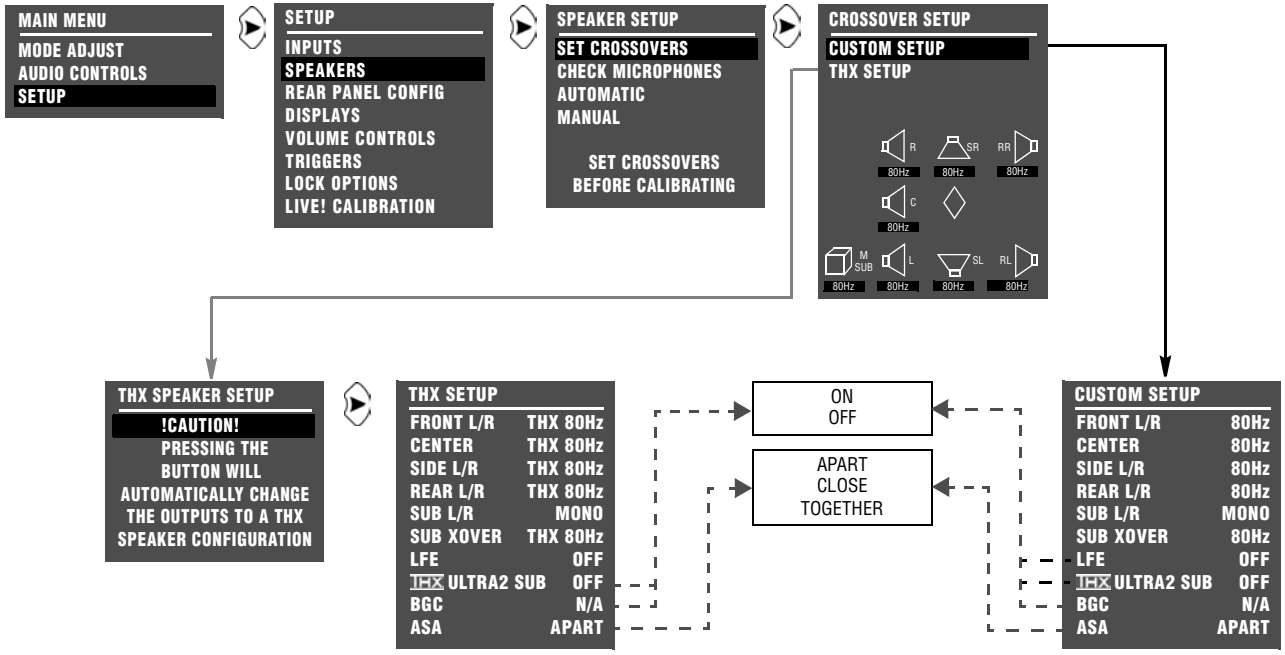
When a THX speaker setup is selected, the LFE information is redirected to the SUBWOOFER L/R output connectors, and the LFE parameter cannot be adjusted.

THX ULTRA2 SUB ON, OFF

SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ CUSTOM SETUP ▸ THX ULTRA2 SUB

or SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ THX SETUP ▸▸ THX ULTRA2 SUB

Enables boundary gain compensation (BGC) for THX Ultra2-certified subwoofers.



- Select **ON** if the subwoofer using the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Subwoofer L/R is THX Ultra2-certified. When ON is selected, the BGC parameter can be used to adjust boundary gain compensation.
- Select **OFF** if the subwoofer using the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Subwoofer L/R is not THX Ultra2-certified. When OFF is selected, the BGC parameter is not available (N/A).

BGC (BOUNDARY GAIN COMPENSATION) ON, OFF

SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ CUSTOM SETUP ▸ BGC

or SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ THX SETUP ▸▸ BGC

Adjusts boundary gain compensation when the THX ULTRA2 SUB parameter is set to ON.

- Select **ON** to apply a highpass 55Hz filter to all Main Zone audio output connectors and listening modes.
- Select **OFF**, and no filtering is applied to the Main Zone audio output connectors and listening modes.

Note:

BGC compensates for increased bass energy that is caused by the proximity of the speakers to the listening room walls.

ASA (ADVANCED SPEAKER ARRAY) ON, OFF

SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ CUSTOM SETUP ▸ ASA

or SETUP ▸ SPEAKERS ▸ SET CROSSOVERS ▸ THX SETUP ▸▸ ASA

ASA is a proprietary THX technology that processes rear channel signals to optimize the listening experience for THX Ultra2 listening modes, including 5.1 THX ULTRA2, 5.1 THX MUSIC, DTS THX ULTRA2, DTS THX MUSIC, 5.1a THX ULTRA2, or 5.1a THX MUSIC. Applied to film sources, ASA processing blends surround channel signals to optimize ambient and directional surround sounds. Applied to music sources, ASA processing places surround channel signals on a wide, stable rear soundstage.

ASA processing is not available unless:

- One of the THX ULTRA2 listening modes is activated.
- Both side and rear speakers are present.

The ASA parameter can be changed in any mode, but the change will have no effect unless the above conditions are met.

To maximize the effectiveness of ASA processing, configure a 7.1-channel speaker setup so the rear speakers are placed close together facing the center of the listening space.

- Select **APART** if the distance between the rear speakers is greater than 4 feet (1.2m).
- Select **CLOSE** if the distance between the rear speakers is greater than 1 foot (0.3m), but less than 4 feet (1.2m).
- Select **TOGETHER** if the distance between the rear speakers is less than 1 foot (0.3m).

You can use the remote control 7/5 button to toggle between 7- and 5-channel playback. When you use the 7/5 button , the MC-12 automatically:

- Activates ASA processing during 7-channel playback.
- Deactivates ASA processing during 5-channel playback.
- Switches between the 5.1 THX ULTRA2 and THX, DTS THX ULTRA2 and DTS THX, or 5.1a THX ULTRA2 and 5.1a THX listening modes.

CALIBRATING SPEAKER DISTANCES & OUTPUT LEVELS

The MC-12 offers both automatic and manual calibration of speaker distances and output levels. Calibration helps to ensure accurate output signal arrival time and level at the primary listening position. However, it is not a substitute for proper speaker placement.

Before calibrating speaker distances and output levels:

- Set crossover points for the Main Zone audio output connectors. Setting crossover points afterwards could invalidate calibrated output levels. (The CUSTOM or THX SETUP menu can be used to set crossover points.)
- Eliminate extraneous noise in the listening space, including conversation, air conditioners, and sounds that filter in through open doors and windows.
- Move or remove objects – including people – blocking the line-of-sight path between the microphones or SPL meter and the speakers.

SPEAKER CALIBRATION PARAMETERS

The table on the next page indicates the speaker calibration parameters that can be used to set speaker distances and output levels for the speakers connected to the corresponding Main Zone audio output connectors. These parameters are available on the speaker distance and output level menus shown throughout this section. All parameters perform the same function whether automatic or manual calibration is selected.

SPEAKER DISTANCE PARAMETERS +0.0 to 30.0ft or 12.0m

Determine the distance between the primary listening position and the speaker connected to the corresponding Main Zone audio output connector.

OUTPUT LEVEL PARAMETERS -18.0db to +12.0dB

Determine the output level of signals sent to the speaker connected to the corresponding Main Zone audio output connector.

UNITS FEET, METERS

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ MANUAL ▶ SPEAKER DISTANCES ▶ UNITS

Determines the unit of measurement in which speaker distances are calculated on ALL speaker distance menus. When FEET is selected, the MC-12 calculates speaker distances in feet. When METERS is selected, the MC-12 calculates speaker distances in meters. When the UNITS parameter setting is adjusted, the MC-12 automatically adjusts speaker distances to the closest available value in the selected unit of measurement.

	Speaker Distance Settings		Output Level Settings	
Parameter	**Default Setting**	**Possible Setting**	**Default Setting**	**Possible Setting**
FRONT L/R	+0.0ft	+0.0 to 30.0ft or 12.0m	+0.0dB	-18.0 to +12.0dB
CENTER	+0.0ft	+0.0 to 30.0ft or 12.0m	+0.0dB	-18.0 to +12.0dB
FRONT RIGHT	+0.0ft	+0.0 to 30.0ft or 12.0m	+0.0dB	-18.0 to +12.0dB
SIDE LEFT	+0.0ft	+0.0 to 30.0ft or 12.0m	+0.0dB	-18.0 to +12.0dB
REAR LEFT	+0.0ft	+0.0 to 30.0ft or 12.0m	+0.0dB	-18.0 to +12.0dB
REAR RIGHT	+0.0ft	+0.0 to 30.0ft or 12.0m	+0.0dB	-18.0 to +12.0dB
SIDE RIGHT	+0.0ft	+0.0 to 30.0ft or 12.0m	+0.0dB	-18.0 to +12.0dB
MONO SUB*	+0.0ft	+0.0 to 30.0ft or 12.0m	+0.0dB	-18.0 to +12.0dB
SUB RIGHT	N/A†	+0.0 to 30.0ft or 12.0m	N/A†	-18.0 to +12.0dB
LFE	N/A†	+0.0 to 30.0ft or 12.0m	N/A†	-18.0 to +12.0dB
UNITS	FEET	FEET, METERS		

** When one subwoofer is included in the speaker setup, this parameter is labeled MONO SUB. When two subwoofers are included in the speaker setup, this parameter is labeled SUB LEFT.*
† When a speaker is not included in the speaker setup, the corresponding speaker distance or output level parameter is not available (N/A).

AUTOMATIC CALIBRATION

The MC-12 offers automatic calibration of speaker distances, output levels, or both. The table below indicates available automatic calibration options. **A successful microphone check is required before automatic calibration can be performed.**

Automatic Options	Details
MICROPHONE CHECK	• Confirms that the microphones are properly connected and functioning. • Calculates an average level for the microphones connected to the microphone input connectors, allowing the MC-12 to compensate for individual microphone sensitivities during automatic calibration. • Ensures that microphone levels are consistent, eliminating automatic calibration errors from individual microphone levels.
DISTANCES & LEVELS	• Activates automatic calibration of speaker distances and output levels. • Offers accurate calibration with minimal interaction, automatically applying calibrated speaker distances and output levels. • Calibrates speaker distances within 0.5 foot (.2m) of the physical distance between the primary listening position and the speaker. • Calibrates individual speaker output levels within +/-0.5dB of each other and overall speaker output levels within +/-3.0dB of THX reference levels (75dB).
DISTANCES	• Activates automatic calibration of speaker distances. • Provides a comparison between original and calibrated speaker distances, allowing selection of the desired values. • Calibrates speaker distances within 0.5 foot (.2m) of the physical distance between the primary listening position and the speaker.
LEVELS	• Activates automatic calibration of output levels. • Provides a comparison between original and calibrated output levels, allowing selection of the desired values. • Calibrates individual speaker output levels within +/-0.5dB of each other and overall speaker output levels within +/-3.0dB of THX reference levels (75dB).

CONNECTING THE MICROPHONES

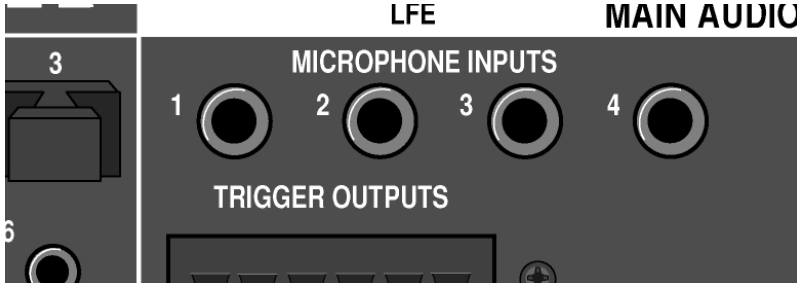
CAUTION!

- **The microphones included in the Lexicon Microphone Kit require careful handling. Dropping or otherwise physically abusing the microphones might cause errors during use or irreparable damage to the microphone.**
- **The microphone wires also require careful handling. Do not sharply bend the wires or place objects on them.**
- **Never make or break microphone input connections unless the MC-12 is powered off with the rear panel power switch OR standby mode is activated with the front panel or remote control standby button.**

Note the following:

- Automatic calibration requires the microphones included in the Lexicon Microphone Kit available at authorized Lexicon dealers. Performing automatic calibration with microphones other than those in the kit will produce unpredictable results.
- Proper microphone placement is essential to achieving the desired automatic calibration results. Pay particular attention to the microphone placement instructions and illustrations included in this section.
- It is important to read and observe the care and handling documentation included with the Lexicon Microphone Kit to ensure optimal microphone performance.

MC-12 Rear Panel



1. Make sure the MC-12 is powered off OR in standby mode.
2. Connect the microphones included in the Lexicon Microphone Kit to the microphone input connectors on the MC-12 rear panel as shown above. Make sure the microphone cable plug is fully inserted for a solid connection.

   During the microphone check, the microphones will be referred to as 1, 2, 3, and 4 based on the input connector to which the microphone is connected. You should label the microphones for troubleshooting purposes.
3. Power on the MC-12 OR deactivate standby mode.

POSITIONING THE MICROPHONES FOR THE MICROPHONE CHECK

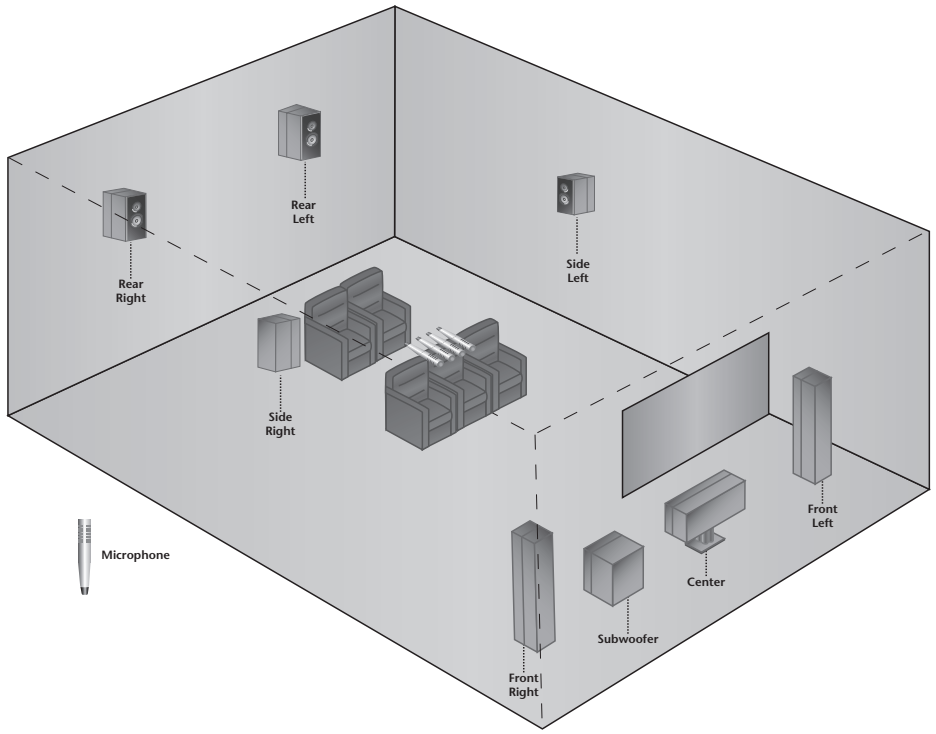
Refer to the microphone placement examples that begin below to position the microphones for the microphone check.

PROPER *microphone positioning for the microphone check*

During the microphone check, position the microphones:

- ✓ As close together as possible
- ✓ Relatively centered between and equidistant from the front left and right speakers
- ✓ In a clear line-of-sight path with the speakers
- ✓ In a location unobstructed by furniture and other fixtures, where echoes will not obscure calibration noise signals
- ✓ At least 2 feet (0.61m) from all speakers and walls, but within 30 feet (9.14m) of all speakers.

The illustration to the right provides an example of proper microphone placement during the microphone check. All of the microphones are positioned as close together as possible in an unobstructed location that is equidistant from the front left and right speakers.

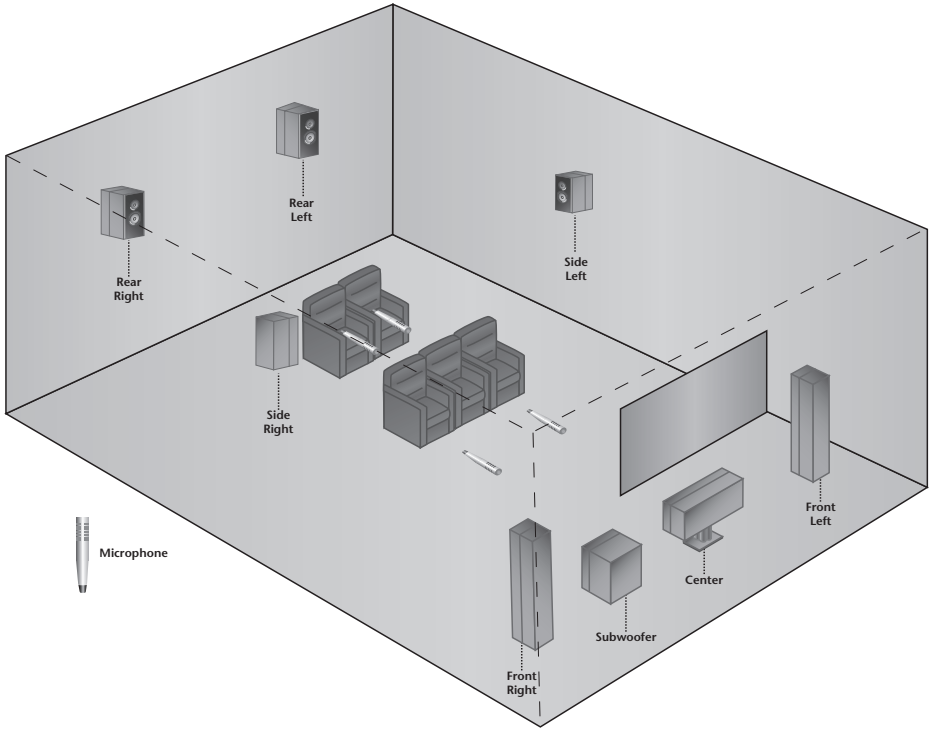


IMPROPER *microphone positioning for the microphone check*

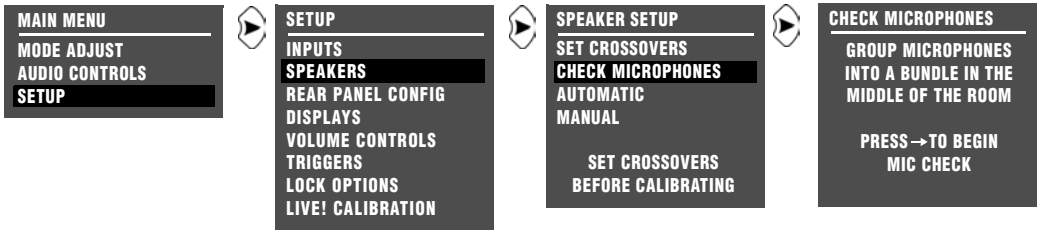
During the microphone check, do not:

- ✗ Separate the microphones
- ✗ Scatter the microphones throughout the listening space
- ✗ Obstruct the line-of-sight path between the microphones and the speakers
- ✗ Position the microphones on the floor, on seat cushions, or in locations obstructed by furniture and other fixtures, where echoes might obscure calibration noise signals
- ✗ Position the microphones within 2 feet (0.61m) of speakers and walls or more than 30 feet (9.14m) from any one speaker.

The illustration to the right provides an example of improper microphone placement during the microphone check. The microphones are scattered throughout the listening space rather than positioned as close together as possible in a location that is equidistant from the front left and right speakers.



CHECKING THE MICROPHONES

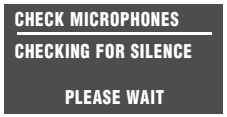


Note the following:

- The MC-12 outputs calibration noise signals between 55 and 95dB, beginning with 55dB and increasing in 5dB increments until the microphones detect the required level. If the calibration noise signal becomes too loud, press the ◂ arrow button to cancel the microphone check.
- Although the calibration noise signal is output at a fixed volume level, you should set all volume controls for associated components (i.e. speakers, subwoofers, and power amplifiers) to a reasonable level before performing automatic calibration. When the procedure is finished, the MC-12 automatically reverts to the last volume level that was selected before automatic calibration began.
- During automatic calibration, you should refer to the on-screen display instead of the front panel display, as additional information and instructions are available on the on-screen display.

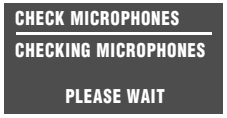
1. Select the SPEAKER SETUP menu CHECK MICROPHONES option as shown above.
2. The first CHECK MICROPHONES screen opens in the on-screen display, indicating the importance of proper microphone placement to achieve accurate automatic calibration results.
3. Press the ▸ arrow button to begin the microphone check. The following screens appear in the on-screen display as the microphone check is performed:

CHECKING FOR SILENCE



Appears in the on-screen display while the MC-12 determines the relative noise level of the listening space and the internal noise level of the microphones. After eliminating microphones that are not detected or not functioning, the MC-12 calculates an average level for all microphones.

CHECKING MICROPHONES



Appears in the on-screen display while the MC-12 confirms the microphone level calculated during the silence check. To do this, the MC-12 sends alternating calibration noise signals to the front left and right speakers. These signals are output between 55 and 95dB, beginning with 55dB and increasing in 5dB increments until the microphones detect the required

CHECKING THE MICROPHONES (continued)

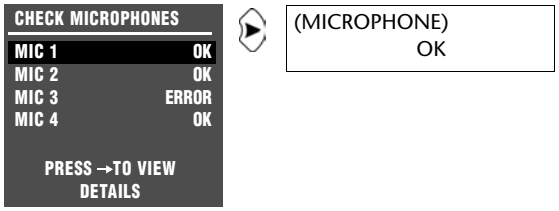
level. If the signal becomes too loud, press the ◀ arrow button to cancel the microphone check.

The MC-12 uses the calibration noise signal to eliminate microphones that register the signal at a level that is too low or too high. Then, the MC-12 determines the appropriate output level for the calibration noise signal used during automatic calibration.

CHECK MICROPHONES Results

Appears on-screen when the MC-12 is finished checking the microphones. This display indicates the individual check results for each microphone.

- An OK result indicates that the microphone passed the microphone check.
- An ERROR result indicates that the microphone did not pass the microphone check.



4. Press the ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons to highlight the desired microphone parameter. The MC-12 refers to the microphones according to the input connector to which the microphone is connected.
5. Press the ▶ arrow button to view more detailed results for the selected microphone. A message similar to the one shown at the bottom of the previous column opens in the on-screen display. Refer to the table on the next page for information about all possible microphone check messages.

Note the following:

- The MC-12 retains the calculated microphone level until the SPEAKER SETUP menu is closed. Once this menu is closed, another microphone check is required before automatic calibration can be performed.
- For best results, you should perform automatic calibration with four microphones that have passed the microphone check. However, the MC-12 will perform automatic calibration as long as at least one microphone passes the microphone check. In this circumstance, place the successfully checked microphones in the primary listening position.
- If a microphone check was successful, do not disconnect the microphones from the microphone input connectors. If the microphones are disconnected, you should perform the microphone check again before proceeding to automatic calibration.

Message	Description	Troubleshooting
(MICROPHONE) OK	The microphone detected the calibration noise signal without error.	• N/A
(MICROPHONE) NOT DETECTED	The MC-12 did not detect the microphone during the silence check.	• Examine microphone input connections to ensure that the microphones are properly connected to the MC-12 and that microphone cable plugs are fully inserted for a solid connection. • The microphone might be damaged. Contact an authorized Lexicon dealer for assistance.
(MICROPHONE) SIGNAL TOO LOW	The MC-12 detected the microphone during the silence check. However, the microphone level determined during the silence check was not confirmed during the microphone check.	• Examine microphone input connections to ensure that the microphones are properly connected to the MC-12 and that microphone cable plugs are fully inserted for a solid connection. • The microphones might be positioned too far from the front speakers. Refer to the microphone placement examples that begin on page 3-42 to confirm that the microphones are appropriately positioned for the microphone check. • The microphone might be damaged. Contact an authorized Lexicon dealer for assistance.
(MICROPHONE) OUT OF RANGE	The microphone level is more than 20dB below the highest microphone level.	• Examine microphone input connections to ensure that the microphones are properly connected to the MC-12 and that microphone cable plugs are fully inserted for a solid connection. • The microphones might be positioned too far from the front speakers. Refer to the microphone placement examples that begin on page 3-42 to confirm that the microphones are appropriately positioned for the microphone check. • The microphone might be damaged. Contact an authorized Lexicon dealer for assistance.
(MICROPHONE) TOO MUCH ROOM NOISE	The microphone level could not be determined because of excessive room noise in the listening space.	• Eliminate extraneous noises in the listening space, including conversations, air conditioners, and sounds that filter in through open doors and windows. • The microphone might be damaged. Contact an authorized Lexicon dealer for assistance.

POSITIONING THE MICROPHONES FOR AUTOMATIC CALIBRATION

Proper microphone placement is essential to achieving the desired automatic calibration results. Microphone placement determines whether the MC-12 calibrates optimal speaker distances and output levels for a single listening position, several listening positions in a single row, or several listening positions in the listening space.

Refer to the microphone placement examples that begin on the next page to position the microphones for automatic calibration. Select the microphone placement that best meets the needs of the listening space.

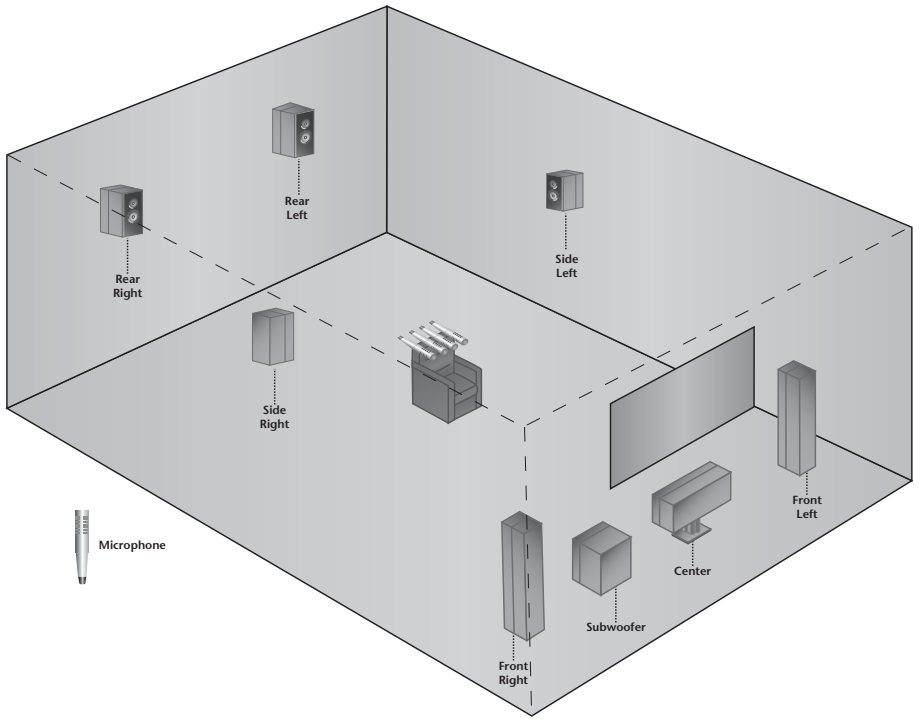
POSITIONING THE MICROPHONES FOR AUTOMATIC CALIBRATION *(continued)*

PROPER *microphone placement to achieve the best results for a single listening position*

When calibrating for a single listening position, place the microphones:

- ✓ As close together as possible in a single listening position (the primary listening position)
- ✓ At the approximate spot where the listener's head will be during listening
- ✓ In a clear line-of-sight path with the speakers
- ✓ In a location unobstructed by furniture and other fixtures, where echoes will not obscure calibration noise signals
- ✓ At least 2 feet (0.61m) from all speakers and walls, but within 30 feet (9.14m) of all speakers.

The illustration to the right provides an example of proper microphone placement when calibrating for a single listening position. The microphones are positioned as close together as possible in a single listening position, allowing the MC-12 to calibrate optimal speaker distances and output levels for that position.

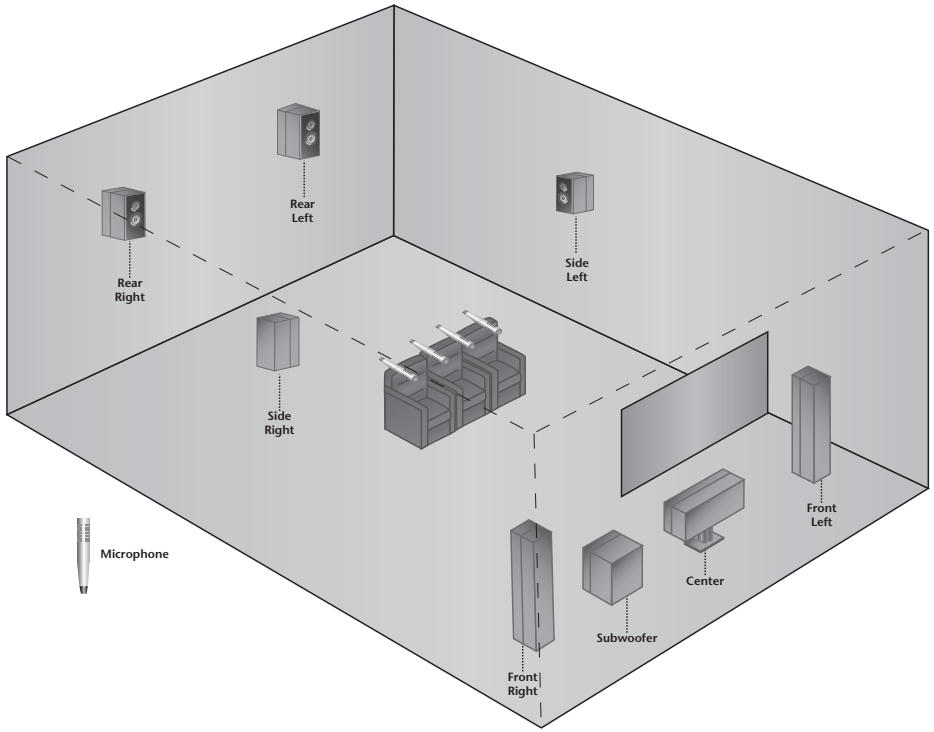


PROPER *microphone placement to achieve the best results for multiple listening positions in a single row*

When calibrating for multiple listening positions in a single row, position the microphones:

- ✓ At the approximate spot where the listener's head will be during listening
- ✓ In a clear line-of-sight path with the speakers
- ✓ In a location unobstructed by furniture and other fixtures, where echoes will not obscure calibration noise signals
- ✓ At least 2 feet (0.61m) from all speakers and walls, but within 30 feet (9.14m) of all speakers.

The illustration to the right provides an example of proper microphone placement when calibrating for multiple listening positions in a single row. Each microphone is positioned in a single listening position within a single row, allowing the MC-12 to calibrate optimal speaker distances and output levels for that row at the expense of a single listening position.



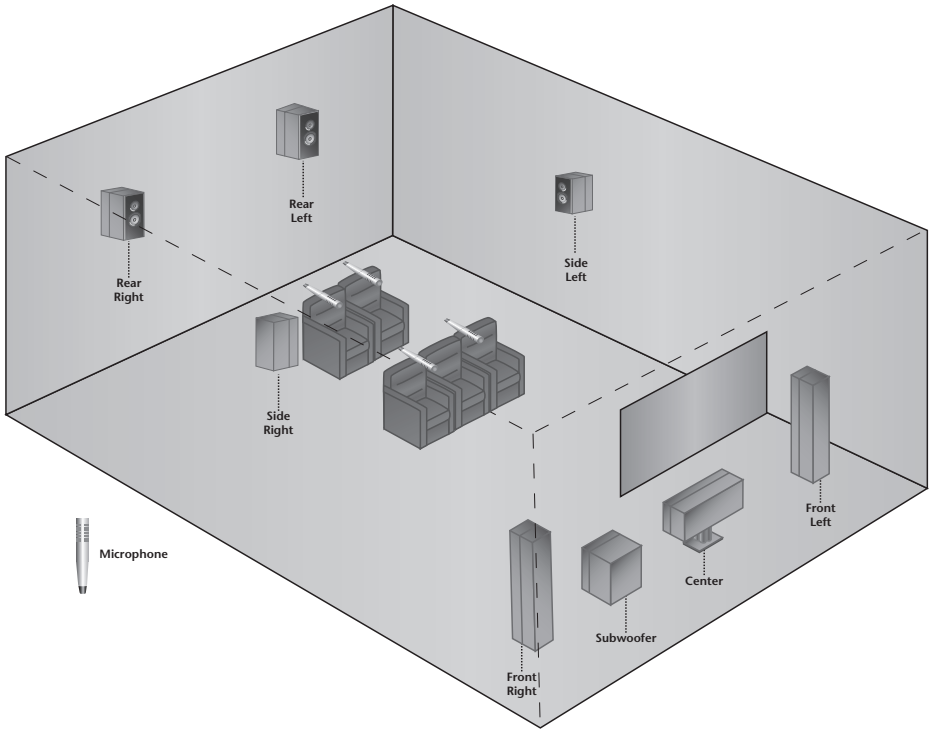
POSITIONING THE MICROPHONES FOR AUTOMATIC CALIBRATION *(continued)*

PROPER *microphone placement to achieve the best results for multiple listening positions in multiple rows*

When calibrating for multiple listening positions in multiple rows, position the microphones:

- ✓ At the approximate spot where the listener's head will be during listening
- ✓ In a clear line-of-sight path with the speakers
- ✓ In a location unobstructed by furniture and other fixtures, where echoes will not obscure calibration noise signals
- ✓ At least 2 feet (0.61m) from all speakers and walls, but within 30 feet (9.14m) of all speakers.

The illustration to the right provides an example of proper microphone placement when calibrating for multiple listening positions in multiple rows. Each microphone is positioned in a single listening position within rows, allowing the MC-12 to calibrate optimal speaker distances and output levels for a larger listening area at the expense of a single listening position.

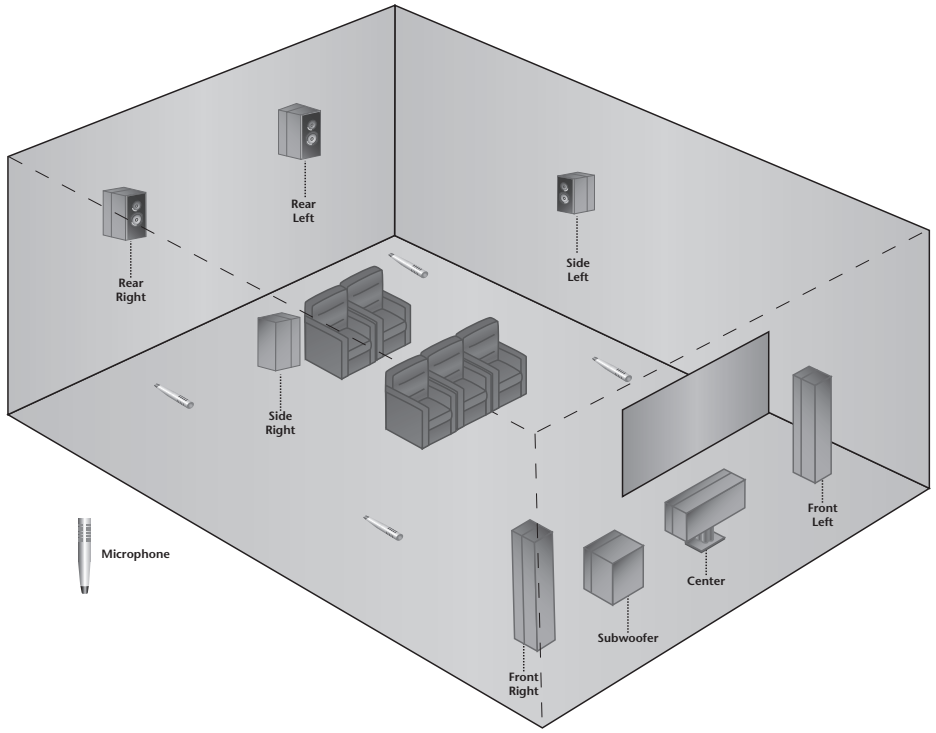


IMPROPER *microphone positioning for automatic calibration*

During the automatic calibration, do not:

- ✗ Arrange the microphones along the perimeter of the listening positions or space
- ✗ Position the microphones in spots where the listeners' heads will not be during listening
- ✗ Obstruct the line-of-sight path between the microphones and the speakers
- ✗ Position the microphones on the floor, on seat cushions, or in locations obstructed by furniture and other fixtures, where echoes might obscure calibration noise signals
- ✗ Position the microphones within 2 feet (0.61m) of speakers and walls or more than 30 feet (9.14m) from any one speaker.

The illustration to the right provides an example of improper microphone placement during the microphone check. The microphones are positioned on the floor along the perimeter of the listening space, making it difficult for the MC-12 to calibrate optimal speaker distances and output levels for the actual listening positions.



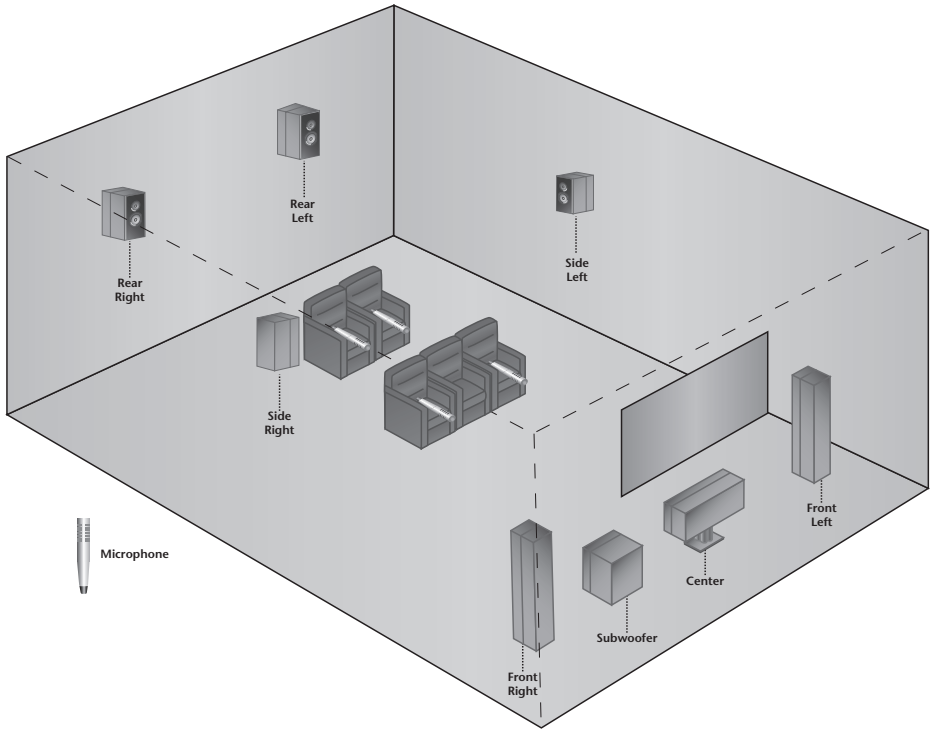
POSITIONING THE MICROPHONES FOR AUTOMATIC CALIBRATION *(continued)*

IMPROPER *microphone positioning for automatic calibration*

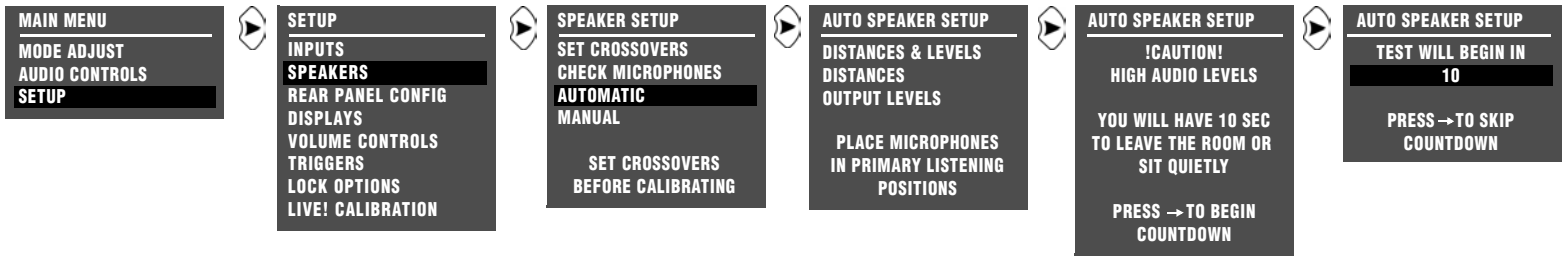
During the automatic calibration, do not:

- ✗ Arrange the microphones along the perimeter of the listening positions or space
- ✗ Position the microphones at spots where the listeners' heads will not be during listening
- ✗ Obstruct the line-of-sight path between the microphones and the speakers
- ✗ Position the microphones on the floor, on seat cushions, or in locations obstructed by furniture and other fixtures, where echoes might obscure calibration noise signals
- ✗ Position the microphones within 2 feet (0.61m) of speakers and walls or more than 30 feet (9.14m) from any one speaker.

The illustration to the right provides an example of improper microphone placement during the microphone check. The microphones are positioned on seat cushions rather than in spots where the listener's heads will be during listening.



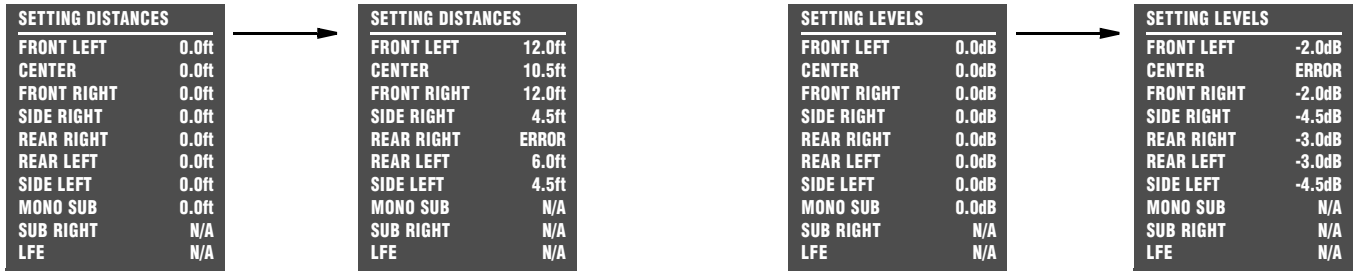
PERFORMING AUTOMATIC CALIBRATION



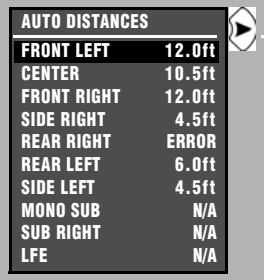
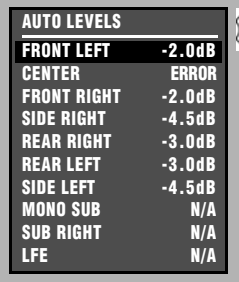
Follow the procedures in the appropriate table column for the desired type of automatic calibration.

STEP	DISTANCES	DISTANCES & LEVELS	LEVELS
1	**Select the SPEAKER SETUP menu AUTOMATIC option as shown in the menu illustration above.** • If a microphone check is successful, the AUTO SPEAKER SETUP menu becomes available on the on-screen display. Press the ▲ or ▼ arrow button to highlight the automatic calibration option you want. Then, press the ▶ arrow button to select this option. Refer to the table on page 3-35 for more information about automatic calibration options. • If a microphone check is unsuccessful, one of the error messages shown at the right appears on the on-screen display, indicating that a successful microphone check is required before automatic calibration is available, and also the reason the previous check failed. If this occurs, go back to "Connecting the Microphones" on page 3-36 and work your way forward to this page.		MIC CHECK REQUIRED FOR AUTO CALIBRATION NO MICROPHONE DETECTED
2	**The following AUTO SPEAKER SETUP messages display on-screen before automatic calibration begins:** • The !CAUTION! HIGH AUDIO LEVELS message indicates that the MC-12 generates loud calibration noise signals during automatic calibration. If the signals become too loud, press the ◀ arrow button to cancel automatic calibration. Press the ▶ arrow button to open the next AUTO SPEAKER SETUP menu. • The countdown display notifies you that automatic calibration will begin in 10 seconds. The primary reason for the 10 second delay is to give you time to leave the listening space before automatic calibration begins. If you choose to remain in the room, your movements could affect the calibration results. If you leave the room, you can return in about 10 minutes (the calibration procedure should be completed). Press the ▶ arrow button to skip the countdown and begin automatic calibration. The MC-12 automatically activates automatic calibration when the countdown ends.		

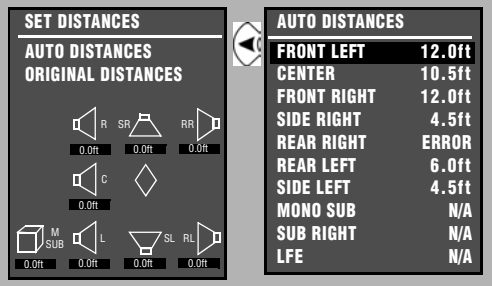
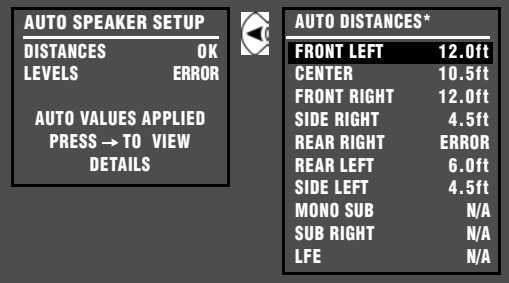
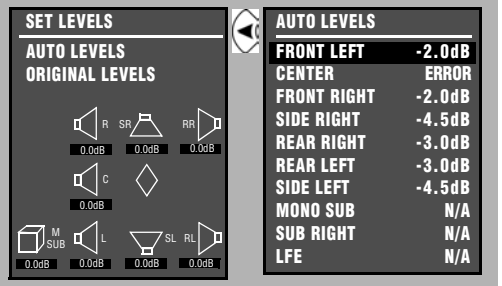
PERFORMING AUTOMATIC CALIBRATION *(continued)*



STEP	DISTANCES	DISTANCES & LEVELS	LEVELS
3	**The SETTING DISTANCES screen displays when the MC-12 calibrates speaker distances.** • During speaker distance calibration, the MC-12 sends calibration noise signals to the Main Zone audio output connectors in the order shown on the SETTING DISTANCES screen. The cursor automatically scrolls downward through speaker calibration parameters, highlighting each parameter while the MC-12 calculates a distance for the corresponding speaker. As it finishes each parameter, the MC-12 enters the calibrated value or an ERROR message to the right of the parameter label. • Because of the way low frequency signals propagate in most listening spaces, automatic speaker distance calibration often produces unreliable results for subwoofers and LFE subwoofers. For this reason the MC-12 does not send calibration noise signals to the Subwoofer L/R and LFE output connectors during speaker distance calibration. Instead, the MC-12 automatically calibrates subwoofer and LFE subwoofer distances to the shortest distance of the other speakers. These distances can be manually adjusted. See "PERFORMING MANUAL SPEAKER DISTANCE CALIBRATION" on page 3-53.		This step does not occur when the AUTO SPEAKER SETUP menu LEVELS option is selected.
4	This step does not occur when the AUTO SPEAKER SETUP menu DISTANCES option is selected.	**The SETTING LEVELS screen displays when the MC-12 calibrates output levels.** • The MC-12 sends calibration noise signals to the Main Zone audio output connectors in the order shown on the SETTING LEVELS screen. The cursor automatically scrolls downward through speaker calibration parameters, highlighting each parameter while the MC-12 calculates an output level for the corresponding speaker. As it finishes each parameter, the MC-12 enters the calibrated value or an ERROR message to the right of the parameter label.	

STEP	DISTANCES	DISTANCES & LEVELS	LEVELS
5	  *Refer to the table on page 3-51 for information about all possible speaker calibration messages.*		  *Refer to the table on page 3-51 for information about all possible speaker calibration messages.*
	When the MC-12 is finished calibrating speaker distances, the AUTO DISTANCES screen displays, indicating the results for each individual speaker. • A value indicates that no errors occurred during the calibration procedure. • An ERROR message indicates that a value was calculated, but at least one error occurred during the calibration procedure. • Press the ▲ or ▼ arrow button to highlight the speaker calibration parameter you want. Then, press the ▶ button to view more detailed results for the selected speaker. A message similar to the one shown above will display. • Refer to the table on 3-51 for information about all possible speaker calibration messages.	**When the MC-12 is finished calibrating speaker distances and output levels, the AUTO SPEAKER SETUP screen displays, indicating the results for each calibration procedure.** • An OK message indicates that no errors occurred during the calibration procedure. • An ERROR message indicates that a value was calculated, but at least one error occurred during calibration. • Press the ▲ or ▼ arrow button to highlight the desired calibration procedure. DISTANCES displays the AUTO DISTANCES screen shown in the left column of this table. LEVELS displays the AUTO LEVELS screen shown in the right column of this table. • Press the ▶ arrow button to select this procedure. • Refer to the instructions in the appropriate column to view more detailed results for each individual speaker.	**When the MC-12 is finished calibrating output levels, the AUTO LEVELS screen displays, indicating the results for each individual speaker.** • A value indicates that no errors occurred during the calibration procedure. • An ERROR message indicates that a value was calculated, but at least one error occurred during the calibration procedure. • Press the ▲ or ▼ arrow button to highlight the desired speaker calibration parameter. Then, press the ▶ arrow button to view more detailed results for the selected speaker. A message similar to the one shown above displays. • Refer to the table on page 3-51 for information about all possible speaker calibration messages.
Note:	*To fine-tune individual speaker distances and output levels, refer to the MANUAL CALIBRATION section that begins on page 3-52. You should also configure BASS PEAK LIMITERS parameter settings. (See "SETTING BASS PEAK LIMITERS" on page 3-57.)*		

PERFORMING AUTOMATIC CALIBRATION *(continued)*

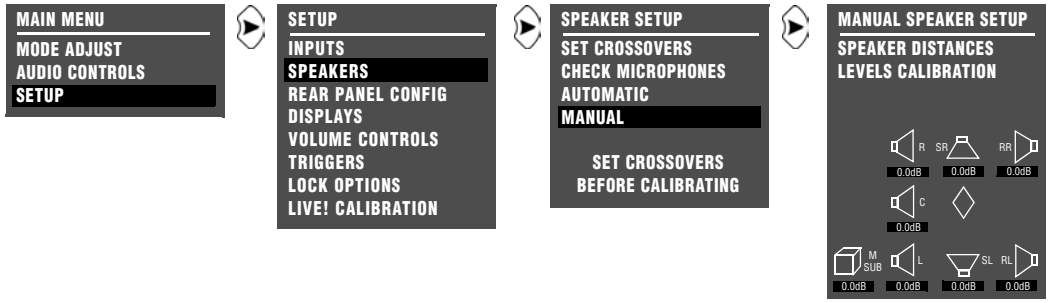
STEP	DISTANCES	DISTANCES & LEVELS	LEVELS
6			
	Use the SET DISTANCES menu to select the desired speaker distances. 1 Press the ◂ arrow button to return to the SET DISTANCES menu. 2 Press the ▴ or ▾ arrow button to toggle between calibrated speaker distances (AUTO) and original speaker distances. The speaker graphics at the bottom of the menu update to indicate the selected values. 3 Press the ▸ button to apply the selected values. A confirmation message displays to indicate the applied values. 4 Press the ◂ button twice in succession to return to the SPEAKER SETUP menu.	**Use the AUTO SPEAKER SETUP menu to select speaker distances or levels.** 1 Press the ◂ arrow button to return to the AUTO SPEAKER SETUP results screen. 2 To select the other calibration procedure, follow the instructions in Step 5. Otherwise, press the ◂ button to return to the SPEAKER SETUP menu. *The AUTO DISTANCES screen is shown above as an example. The AUTO LEVELS screen can be substituted.*	**Use the SET LEVELS menu to select the desired speaker levels.** 1 Press the ◂ arrow button to return to the SET LEVELS menu. • Press the ▴ and ▾ arrow buttons to toggle between calibrated output levels (AUTO) and original output levels. The speaker graphics at the bottom of the menu update to indicate the selected values. • Press the ▸ arrow button to apply the selected values. A confirmation message displays to indicate the applied values. • Press the ◂ arrow button twice in succession to return to the SPEAKER SETUP menu.

Message	Description	Troubleshooting
(SPEAKER) OK	The MC-12 successfully calibrated the value for the selected speaker without error.	• N/A
(SPEAKER) SPEAKER IS NOT ENABLED	The selected speaker is not present in the speaker setup	• Set the corresponding CUSTOM or THX SETUP menu parameter to include the selected speaker in the speaker setup. (The MC-12 only calibrates values for speakers that are included in the speaker setup.)
(SPEAKER) SPEAKER OUT OF PHASE	The microphones detected out-of-phase calibration noise signals, but the calibrated value is still accurate.	• Examine speaker/associated amplifier connections to ensure that speaker wires are not crossed. • Dipolar speakers could cause this error. However, the MC-12 does not report this error unless at least half of the microphones detect out-of-phase calibration noise signals. • Reflections from room objects can cause an out of phase error. • Drivers intentionally wired out-of-phase.
(SPEAKER) SIGNAL TOO LOW	The microphones detected calibration noise signals at an unusually low level.	• The microphones might be positioned more than 30 feet (9.14m) from the selected speaker or in a location where echoes obscure calibration noise signals. Refer to the placement examples on pages 3-42 to 3-46 to confirm that the microphones are appropriately positioned for automatic calibration. • Examine microphone input connections to ensure that the microphones are properly connected to the MC-12 and that microphone cable plugs are fully inserted for a solid connection.
(SPEAKER) UNABLE TO CALCULATE	The microphones did not detect calibration noise signals or the MC-12 could not calculate a value.	• Refer to the microphone placement examples on pages 3-42 to 3-46 to confirm that the microphones are appropriately positioned for automatic calibration. • Examine microphone input connections to ensure that the microphones are properly connected to the MC-12 and that microphone cable plugs are fully inserted for a solid connection.
(SPEAKER) MAY NOT BE ACCURATE	One or more microphones did not detect calibration noise signals at a reasonable level. The calibrated value could be inaccurate.	• Refer to the microphone placement examples on pages 3-42 to 3-46 to confirm that the microphones are appropriately positioned for automatic calibration.
(SPEAKER) SPKR OUTPUT TOO HIGH	The microphones detected calibration noise signals at an unusually high level.	• Decrease associated amplifier volume levels – including (if applicable) powered subwoofer amplifiers. • The microphones may be positioned too close (within 2 feet [0.61m]) of the selected speaker. Refer to the microphone placement examples on pages 3-42 to 3-46 to confirm that the microphones are appropriately positioned for automatic calibration.
(SPEAKER) SPKR OUTPUT TOO LOW	The microphones detected calibration noise signals at an unusually low level.	• Increase associated amplifier volume levels – including (if applicable) powered subwoofer amplifiers. • The microphones may be positioned too far away (more than 30 feet [9.14m]) from the selected speaker. See the microphone placement examples on pages 3-42 to 3-46 to confirm that the microphones are appropriately positioned for automatic calibration.

MANUAL CALIBRATION

SETUP ▶ **SPEAKERS** ▶ **MANUAL**

Selecting the SPEAKER SETUP menu MANUAL option displays the MANUAL SPEAKER SETUP menu, to manually calibrate speaker distances and output levels. The table below indicates available manual calibration options.

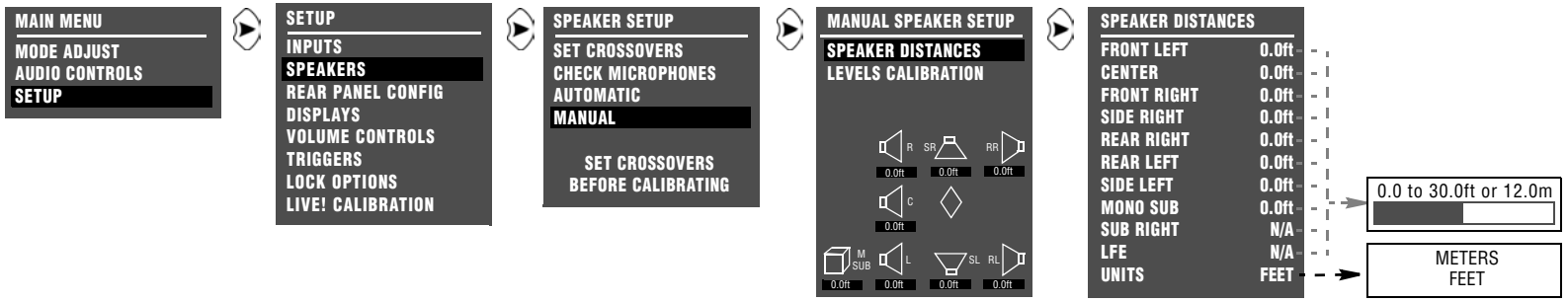


Manual Options	DetailsB
SPEAKER DISTANCES	Provides manual calibration and individual adjustment of speaker distances.
LEVELS CALIBRATION	Provides manual calibration and individual adjustment of output levels.
	INTERNAL NOISE TEST Automatically sends an internal calibration noise signal to each Main Zone audio output connector, allowing for simultaneous output level adjustment.
	EXTERNAL NOISE TEST • Requires an external calibration source such as an audio calibration disc. • Activates an appropriate listening mode based on the current Main Zone input source.
	BASS PEAK LIMITERS • Provides amplitude limits for low frequency signals sent to the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Subwoofer L/R and LFE, and low frequency signals redirected to other Main Zone audio output connectors. • Protects speakers against input sources that produce low frequency signal peaks.

PERFORMING MANUAL SPEAKER DISTANCE CALIBRATION

SETUP ▶ **SPEAKERS** ▶ **MANUAL** ▶ **SPEAKER DISTANCES**

Selecting the MANUAL SPEAKER SETUP menu SPEAKER DISTANCES option displays the SPEAKER DISTANCES menu, to manually calibrate speaker distances.



To manually calibrate speaker distances:

1. Follow the menu path shown above to select SPEAKER DISTANCES. The SPEAKER DISTANCES menu shown above will open on the on-screen display.
2. Press the ▲ or ▼ arrow buttons to highlight the desired speaker distance parameter. Then, press the ▶ arrow button to select the highlighted speaker distance parameter.
3. To determine the appropriate speaker distance, measure the distance between the primary listening position and the front of the speaker.

   For example, when the FRONT LEFT parameter is selected, measure the distance between the primary listening position and the front of the front left speaker (connected to the Main Zone audio output connector labeled Front L).
4. When the speaker distance has been measured, press the ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons to set the parameter to the closest available value.

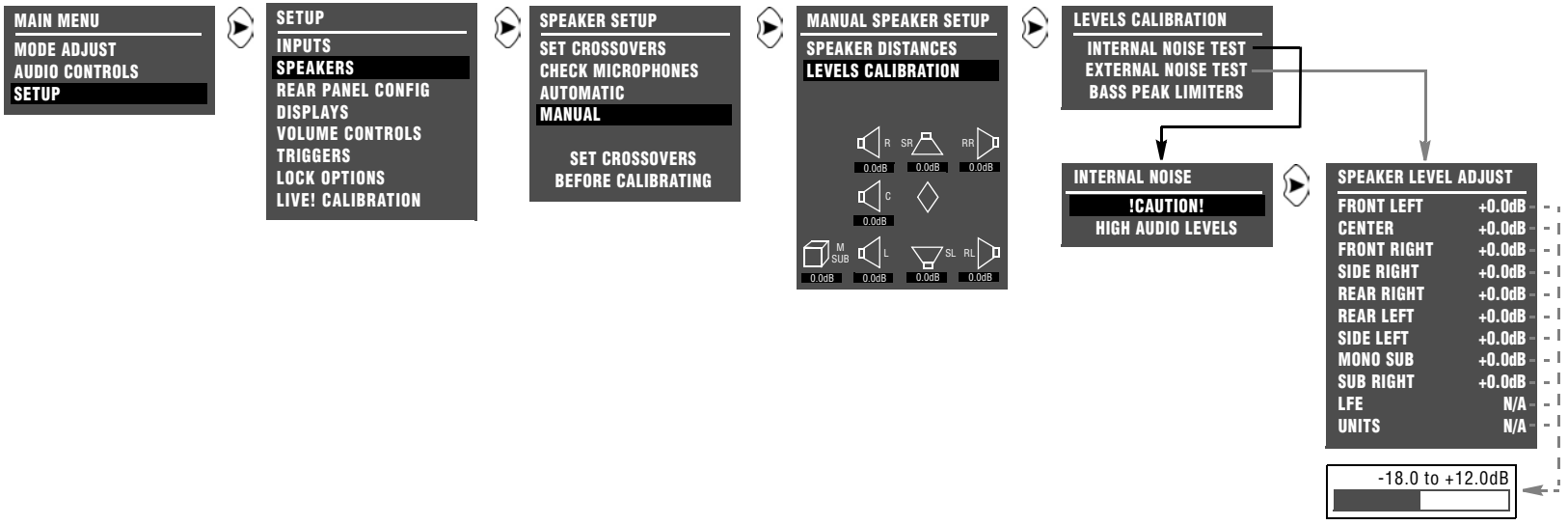
PERFORMING MANUAL OUTPUT LEVEL CALIBRATION

SETUP ▶ **SPEAKERS** ▶ **MANUAL** ▶ **LEVELS CALIBRATION**

Selecting the MANUAL SPEAKER SETUP menu LEVELS CALIBRATION option displays the LEVELS CALIBRATION menu to manually calibrate output levels.

Note the following:

- You should use a Sound Pressure Level (SPL) meter to manually calibrate output levels. An SPL meter is a device that measures the relative loudness of the speakers to ensure accurate output level calibration. SPL meters are available at Radio Shack.
- Output levels should be calibrated from the primary listening position, placing the SPL meter at the approximate location where the listener's head will be during listening.
- Output levels for speakers that are not included in the speaker setup cannot be adjusted during the internal noise test. These output levels can be adjusted during the external noise test, but there is no need to do so.



INTERNAL NOISE TEST

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ MANUAL ▶ LEVELS CALIBRATION ▶ INTERNAL NOISE TEST

Opens the INTERNAL NOISE message shown on the previous page, which indicates that the internal noise test generates loud calibration noise signals.

When the INTERNAL NOISE message opens:

- Press the ▸ arrow button to open the SPEAKER LEVEL ADJUST menu shown on the previous page. When the SPEAKER LEVEL ADJUST menu opens, the internal noise test automatically begins.
- Press the ◂ button to skip the internal noise test.

During the internal noise test, the MC-12 sends calibration noise signals to each speaker in the order shown on the SPEAKER LEVEL ADJUST menu. The cursor automatically scrolls through output level parameters, highlighting each parameter as the MC-12 sends the calibration noise signal to the corresponding speaker. The calibration noise signal is sent to each speaker for about 4 seconds.

Note:

When the internal noise test begins, the MC-12 automatically sets volume level to +0dB. Avoid adjusting the master volume level while the test is in progress to achieve THX reference levels (75dB).

To manually calibrate output levels during the internal noise test:

1. Set the SPL meter to "C" weighting and "SLOW" response.
2. Press the ▲ or ▼ arrow button to highlight the desired output level parameter. Then, quickly press the ▸ button to select this output level parameter. The horizontal bar graph shown on the previous page will open on the on-screen display and automatic scrolling will stop.

   Note:

   During the internal noise test, it is possible to select an output level parameter just as the cursor is about to automatically scroll to the next parameter, causing the MC-12 to send the calibration noise signal to both speakers. If this occurs, reselect the desired speaker.

3. When the horizontal bar graph opens, press the ▲ or ▼ button to select the output level that achieves a 75dB SPL meter reading from the primary listening position.
4. Press ◂ to close the parameter. The internal noise test will continue and automatic scrolling will resume.
5. Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 until all desired output levels have been set.

EXTERNAL NOISE TEST

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ MANUAL ▶ LEVELS CALIBRATION ▶ EXTERNAL NOISE TEST

Selecting the LEVELS CALIBRATION menu EXTERNAL NOISE TEST option opens the SPEAKER LEVEL ADJUST menu shown on page 3-54, which manually calibrates output levels.

The external noise test requires an external calibration source such as an audio calibration disc. When the external noise test is conducted, the MC-12 activates a listening mode based on the current Main Zone input source. Refer to the table below for more information about external noise test listening mode activation.

When a listening mode is activated during the external noise test, all custom listening mode menu parameter settings are ignored. The listening mode is applied to the current Main Zone input source in its factory-default condition. When the external noise test is finished, the listening mode returns to its custom condition.

INPUT SOURCE	LISTENING MODE
2-Channel	DOLBY PLII MOVIE, DOLBY PLIIx MOVIE*
Dolby Digital	DIGITAL**
DTS(-ES)	dts ES*
5.1-Channel Analog	5.1a STANDARD

** These listening modes depend on the speaker configuration. Dolby Pro Logic IIx MOVIE will only load when side and rear speakers are present.*

***These listening mode names differ depending on the current input source, speaker setup, and parameter settings. Refer to the Listening Mode Descriptions section beginning on page 5-5 for more information.*

Note:

When the external noise test begins, the MC-12 automatically sets volume level to +0dB. Avoid adjusting the master volume level while the test is in progress to achieve THX reference levels (75dB).

To manually calibrate output levels during the external noise test:

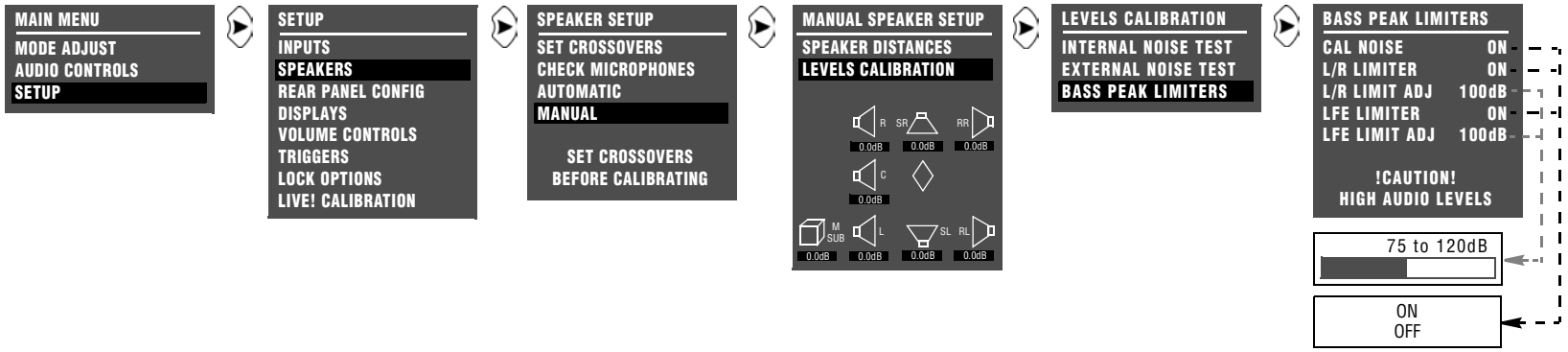
1. Set the SPL Meter to "C" weighting and "SLOW" response.
2. Place the SPL Meter at the primary listening position.
3. Press the ▲ or ▼ arrow button to highlight the output level parameter you want. Then, press the ▶ button to select this output level parameter.

   The horizontal bar graph shown on page 3-54 displays.
4. Begin playback of the external calibration source and press the ▲ or ▼ arrow button to select the output level that achieves a 75dB SPL Meter reading.
5. After selecting the output level, press the ◀ arrow button to close the horizontal bar graph.
6. Repeat steps 2, 3, and 4 until you have set all the output levels you want.

SETTING BASS PEAK LIMITERS

SETUP ▶ **SPEAKERS** ▶ **MANUAL** ▶ **LEVELS CALIBRATION** ▶ **BASS PEAK LIMITERS**

The BASS PEAK LIMITERS option displays the BASS PEAK LIMITERS menu to set amplitude limits on low frequency signals sent to the Main Zone audio output Subwoofer L/R and LFE connectors. This menu also sets amplitude limits on low frequency signals redirected to other Main Zone audio output connectors. The MC-12 is equipped with an internal limiter to prevent low frequency signals from exceeding a designated output level. This is essential for Dolby Digital and DTS(-ES) sources that produce low frequency signal peaks at much higher output levels than 2-channel sources. In home theaters, there is a danger of the subwoofers and their associated amplifiers overloading when attempting to reproduce low frequency signals.



Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Setting
CAL NOISE	ON	ON, OFF
L/R LIMITER	ON	ON, OFF
L/R LIMIT ADJ	100dB	75 to 120dB
LFE LIMITER	ON	ON, OFF
LFE LIMIT ADJ	100dB	75 to 120dB

Note:

You should configure BASS PEAK LIMITERS menu parameter settings whether output levels are automatically or manually calibrated.

CAL NOISE ON, OFF

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ MANUAL ▶ LEVELS CALIBRATION ▶ BASS PEAK LIMITERS ▶ CAL NOISE

Determines whether bass peak limiters are set with an internal or external calibration source.

To set the CAL NOISE parameter:

- Select **ON** to activate an internal calibration noise signal to set bass peak limiters.
- Select **OFF** to deactivate the internal calibration noise signal.

  Setting bass peak limiters with the calibration noise set to OFF requires an external calibration source such as an audio calibration disc.

L/R LIMITER ON, OFF

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ MANUAL ▶ LEVELS CALIBRATION ▶ BASS PEAK LIMITERS ▶ L/R LIMITER

Limits low frequency signals sent to the subwoofer or redirected to other speakers.

To set the L/R LIMITER parameter:

- Select **ON** to restrict the output level of the low frequency signals to the L/R LIMIT ADJ parameter setting.
- Select **OFF** to allow an unrestricted signal output level, regardless of the L/R LIMIT ADJ parameter setting.

L/R LIMIT ADJ 75 to 120dB

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ MANUAL ▶ LEVELS CALIBRATION ▶ BASS PEAK LIMITERS ▶ L/R LIMITER ADJ

Specifies the output level restriction applied to the Subwoofer L/R output connectors, and to other Main Zone audio output connectors to which low frequency signals are redirected.

To set the L/R LIMIT ADJ parameter:

1. Select the **L/R LIMIT ADJ** parameter.

   The parameter initally sets to 75dB.

2. Press the ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons to change the parameter value.

   The selected output level restriction is applied when the L/R LIMITER parameter is set to ON.

LFE LIMITER ON, OFF

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ MANUAL ▶ LEVELS CALIBRATION ▶ BASS PEAK LIMITERS ▶ LFE LIMITER

Limits low frequency signals sent to the LFE subwoofer or redirected to other speakers.

To set the LFE LIMITER parameter:

- Select **ON** to restrict the output level of the low frequency signals to the LFE LIMIT ADJ parameter setting.
- Select **OFF** to allow an unrestricted signal output level, regardless of the LFE LIMIT ADJ parameter setting.

LFE LIMITER ADJ 75 to 120dB

SETUP ▶ SPEAKERS ▶ MANUAL ▶ LEVELS CALIBRATION ▶ BASS PEAK LIMITERS ▶ LFE LIMITER ADJ

Specifies the output level restriction the MC-12 applies to the LFE output connector.

To set the LFE LIMIT ADJ parameter:

1. Select the **LFE LIMIT ADJ** parameter.

   The parameter initally sets to 75dB.

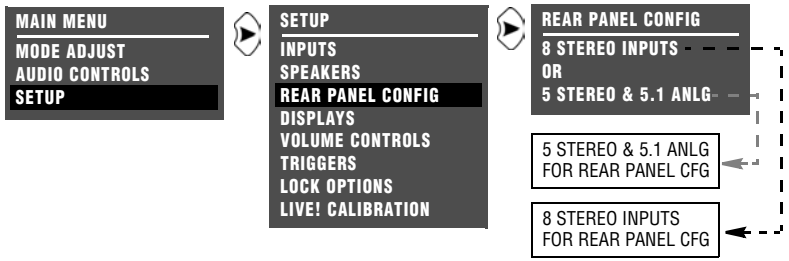
2. Press the ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons to change the parameter value.

   The selected output level restriction is applied when the LFE LIMITER parameter is set to ON.

REAR-PANEL CONFIGURATION

SETUP ▶ REAR PANEL CONFIG

Selecting the REAR PANEL CONFIG option displays the REAR PANEL CONFIG menu shown below, to configure the analog audio input connectors as eight (Left/Right) stereo connectors or as five (Left/Right) stereo connectors and one 5.1-channel configuration (Front L/R, Center, Subwoofer, Side L/R)



8 STEREO INPUTS

SETUP ▶ REAR PANEL CONFIG ▶ 8 STEREO INPUTS

Select the 8 STEREO INPUTS option to configure the analog audio input connectors as eight stereo connectors.

When 8 STEREO INPUTS is selected:

- All analog audio input connectors are configured as stereo connectors.
- The 5.1-channel connector is not available.
- Input sources that were assigned to the 5.1-channel connector are reassigned to the stereo connector labeled 6.

5 STEREO & 5.1 ANLG

SETUP ▷ **REAR PANEL CONFIG** ▷ **5 STEREO & 5.1 ANLG**

Select the 5 STEREO & 5.1 ANLG option to configure the analog audio input connectors as five stereo and one 5.1-channel connectors.

When 5 STEREO & 5.1 ANLG is selected:

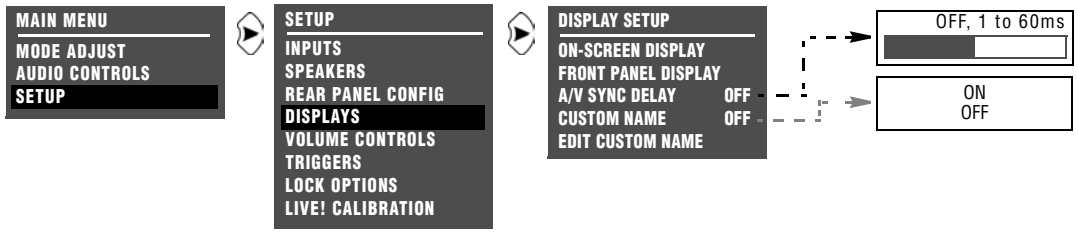
- The 5.1-channel connector should only be used with 5.1-channel analog sources such as DVD-As and SACDs.
- The analog audio input connectors labeled 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 are configured as stereo connectors.
- The analog audio input connectors labeled 6, 7, and 8 are configured as 5.1-channel connectors.
- Input sources that were assigned to the stereo connectors labeled 6, 7, and 8 are reassigned to conform to the 5.1-channel configuration.
- The 5.1-channel input is sent to the Main Zone audio output connectors as indicated in the table below.

Input Connector(s)	Output Connector(s)
(L) & (R)	Front L/R
(C)	Center
(SUB)	Subwoofer L/R & LFE
(LS) & (RS)	Side L/R & Rear L/R

DISPLAY SETUP

SETUP ▶ DISPLAYS

The DISPLAYS option displays the DISPLAY SETUP menu, to customize the on-screen and front-panel displays, restore audio/video synchronization, and create and activate a custom unit name.



Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Setting
ON-SCREEN DISPLAY	Refer to page 3-63	
FRONT PANEL DISPLAY	Refer to page 3-65	
A/V SYNC DELAY	OFF	OFF, 1 to 60ms
CUSTOM NAME	OFF	ON, OFF
EDIT CUSTOM NAME	Refer to page 3-62	

A/V SYNC DELAY

OFF, 1 to 60ms

SETUP ▶ DISPLAYS ▶ A/V SYNC DELAY

Restores audio/video synchronization when the MC-12 is connected to components such as video processors that introduce video signal delays. Select a value between 1 and 60ms to activate an audio signal delay to compensate for the video signal delay.

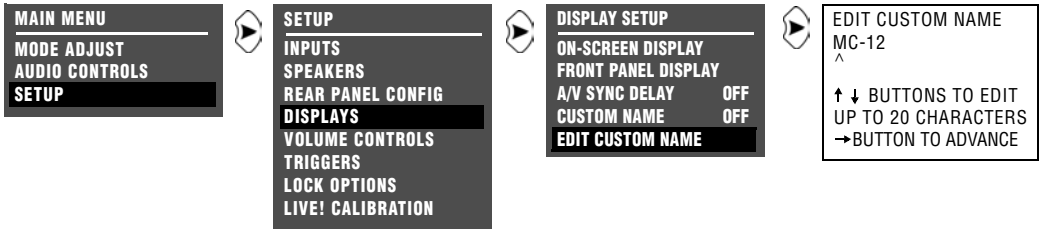
CUSTOM NAME

ON, OFF

SETUP ▶ DISPLAYS ▶ CUSTOM

Activates the display of the custom unit name, which can be created with the EDIT CUSTOM NAME menu. When ON is selected, the custom unit name scrolls across the on-screen and front panel displays whenever the MC-12 is activated. When OFF is selected, the custom unit name does not scroll across the on-screen and front- panel displays when the MC-12 is activated.

DISPLAY SETUP *(continued)*



EDIT CUSTOM NAME

SETUP ▶ **DISPLAYS** ▶ **EDIT CUSTOM NAME**

Opens the EDIT CUSTOM NAME drop-down menu shown above, which can be used to create a custom unit name. The factory default unit name is MC-12.

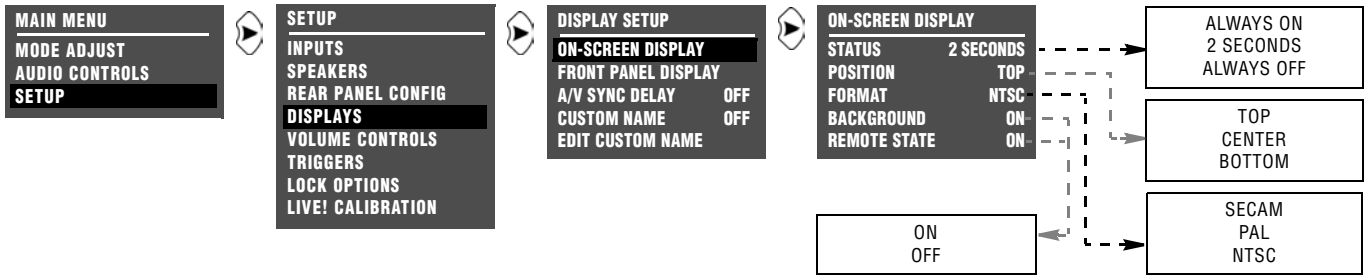
To create a custom unit name:

1. Follow the EDIT CUSTOM NAME menu path shown above to open the EDIT CUSTOM NAME drop-down menu.
2. When the EDIT CUSTOM NAME menu drops down, locate the current unit name on the second line. The cursor automatically appears beneath the first character in the current unit name.
3. Use the following remote control commands to enter a unit name:
   - Press the ▲ or ▼ arrow button to change the character above the cursor.
   - Press the ▶ button to advance to the next character space. The cursor will automatically wrap to the first character space when the last (twentieth) character space is passed.
   - Pressing ◀ will close the EDIT CUSTOM NAME drop-down menu.
4. When the desired custom unit name has been entered, press ◀ until the EDIT CUSTOM NAME menu closes.

ON-SCREEN DISPLAY

SETUP ▶ DISPLAYS ▶ ON-SCREEN DISPLAY

The ON-SCREEN DISPLAY option opens the ON-SCREEN DISPLAY menu, to customize the on-screen display.



Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
STATUS	2 SECONDS	ALWAYS ON, 2 SECONDS, ALWAYS OFF
POSITION	TOP	TOP, CENTER, BOTTOM
FORMAT	NTSC	SECAM,PAL, NTSC
BACKGROUND	ON	ON, OFF
REMOTE STATE	ON	ON, OFF

STATUS

ALWAYS ON, 2 SECONDS, ALWAYS OFF

SETUP ▶ DISPLAYS ▶ ON-SCREEN DISPLAY ▶ STATUS

Controls the activation of the on-screen display when the display device is connected to a Main Zone video output connector. When ALWAYS ON is selected, the on-screen display remains activated at all times. When 2 SECONDS is selected, the on-screen display activates for two seconds whenever a new input source is present or a new command is received. When ALWAYS OFF is selected, the on-screen display remains deactivated at all times, and will not reactivate until the STATUS parameter is set to ALWAYS ON or 2 SECONDS.

Note:

When the ON-SCREEN DISPLAY menu STATUS parameter is set to ALWAYS OFF, the on-screen display immediately deactivates. Press the OSD button or use the front-panel display as a guide to reset the ON-SCREEN DISPLAY menu STATUS parameter to ALWAYS ON or 2 SECONDS.

POSITION

TOP, CENTER, BOTTOM

SETUP ▶ DISPLAYS ▶ ON-SCREEN DISPLAY ▶ POSITION

Controls the vertical alignment of the two-line status on the display device screen. When TOP is selected, the two-line status appears near the top of the display device screen. When CENTER is selected,

the two-line status appears centered on the display device screen. When BOTTOM is selected, the two-line status appears near the bottom of the display device screen.

FORMAT SECAM, PAL, NTSC

SETUP ▸ DISPLAYS ▸ ON-SCREEN DISPLAY ▸ FORMAT

Controls the compatibility between the composite and S-video output connectors, the video switcher, and the display device. Select the setting that is compatible with the source components and the display device.

Note:

The FORMAT parameter has no effect on the component video output connector.

BACKGROUND ON, OFF

SETUP ▸ DISPLAYS ▸ ON-SCREEN DISPLAY ▸ BACKGROUND

Determines the on-screen display background. When ON is selected, the on-screen display appears over a solid blue or gray background (depending on the display device). When OFF is selected, the on-screen display appears over the video input signal.

Note:

When the BACKGROUND parameter is set to OFF, the on-screen display automatically deactivates when the display device is connected to the Main Zone component video output connector.

REMOTE STATE ON, OFF

SETUP ▸ DISPLAYS ▸ ON-SCREEN DISPLAY ▸ REMOTE STATE

Activates the remote control command bank indicator, a letter that appears in the top-right corner of the on-screen display to indicate the command bank from which the MC-12 last received a command. The table below indicates the letter that represents each command bank.

When ON is selected, the command bank indicator appears in the top-right corner of the on-screen display whenever the MC-12 receives a remote control command. When OFF is selected, the command bank indicator does not appear on the on-screen display when the MC-12 receives a remote control command.

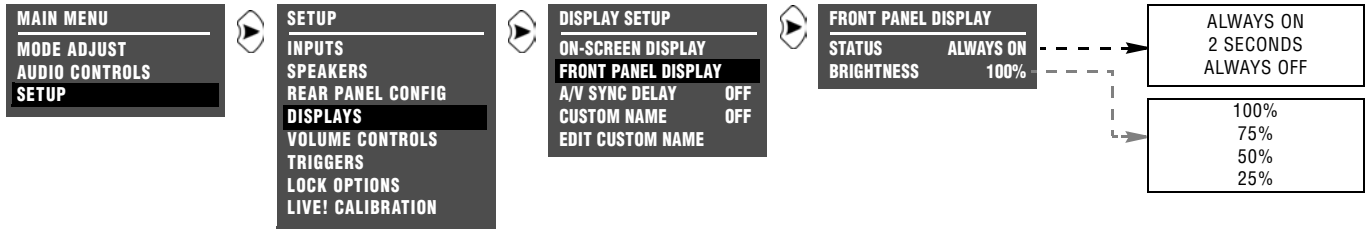
Letter Indicator	Command Bank
None*	Main Zone
Z	Zone 2
R	Record Zone
S	Shift

** No letter appears when the MC-12 receives a command from the Main Zone command bank, even if the REMOTE STATE parameter is set to ON.*

FRONT-PANEL DISPLAY

SETUP ▸ DISPLAYS ▸ FRONT PANEL DISPLAY

Opens the FRONT PANEL DISPLAY menu, to customize the front panel display.



Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
STATUS	ALWAYS ON	ALWAYS ON, 2 SECONDS, ALWAYS OFF
BRIGHTNESS	100%	100%, 75%, 50%, 25%

STATUS

ALWAYS ON, 2 SECONDS, ALWAYS OFF

SETUP ▸ DISPLAYS ▸ FRONT PANEL DISPLAY ▸ STATUS

Controls the activation of the front-panel display. When ALWAYS ON is selected, the front-panel display remains activated at all times. When 2 SECONDS is selected, the front-panel display activates for two seconds whenever a new input source is present or a new command is received. When ALWAYS OFF is selected, the front-panel display remains deactivated at all times, and will not reactivate until the STATUS parameter is reset to ALWAYS ON or 2 SECONDS.

BRIGHTNESS

100%, 75%, 50%, 25%

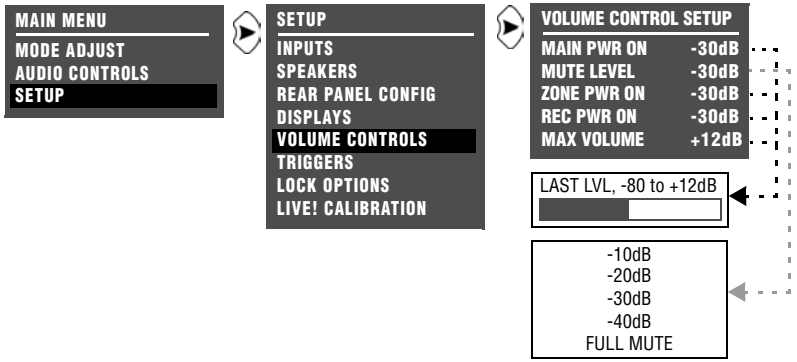
SETUP ▸ DISPLAYS ▸ FRONT PANEL DISPLAY ▸ BRIGHTNESS

Controls the illumination of front-panel display characters. When a setting is selected, front-panel display characters automatically adjust to the selected illumination percentage.

VOLUME-CONTROL SETUP

SETUP ▶ VOLUME CONTROLS

Opens the VOLUME CONTROL SETUP menu, to configure the Main Zone, Zone 2, and Record Zone volume levels.



Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Setting
MAIN PWR ON	-30dB	LAST LVL, -80 to +12dB
MUTE LEVEL	-30dB	-10dB, -20dB, -30dB, -40dB, FULL MUTE
ZONE PWR ON	-30dB	LAST LVL, -80 to +12dB
REC PWR ON	-30dB	LAST LVL, -80 to +12dB
MAX VOLUME	+12dB	-80 to +12dB

MAIN PWR ON

LAST LVL, -80 to +12dB

SETUP ▶ VOLUME CONTROLS ▶ MAIN PWR ON

Selects the volume level at which the Main Zone activates. When a value is selected, the MC-12 automatically sets Main Zone volume level to the selected value when the Main Zone is activated. When LAST LVL is selected, the MC-12 sets Main Zone volume level to the last volume level that was selected in the Main Zone during the previous operating session.

MUTE LEVEL

-10dB, -20dB, -30dB, -40dB, FULL MUTE

SETUP ▶ VOLUME CONTROLS ▶ MUTE LEVEL

Determines the amount of attenuation that occurs in the Main Zone when the Mute button is pressed. When a value is selected, Main Zone volume level is attenuated to the selected value when the Mute button is pressed. When FULL MUTE is selected, Main Zone volume level is fully attenuated when the Mute button is pressed.

ZONE PWR ON

LAST LVL, -80 to +12dB

SETUP ▶ VOLUME CONTROLS ▶ ZONE PWR ON

Selects the volume level at which Zone 2 activates. When a value is selected, the MC-12 automatically sets Zone 2 volume level to the selected value when Zone 2 is activated. When LAST LVL is selected, the MC-12 sets Zone 2 volume level to the last volume level that was selected in Zone 2 during the previous operating session.

REC PWR ON

LAST LVL, -80 to +12dB

SETUP ▶ VOLUME CONTROLS ▶ REC PWR ON

Selects the volume level at which the Record Zone activates. When a value is selected, the MC-12 automatically sets Record Zone volume level to the selected value when the Record Zone is activated. When LAST LVL is selected, the MC-12 sets Record Zone

volume level to the last volume level that was selected in the Record Zone during the previous operating session.

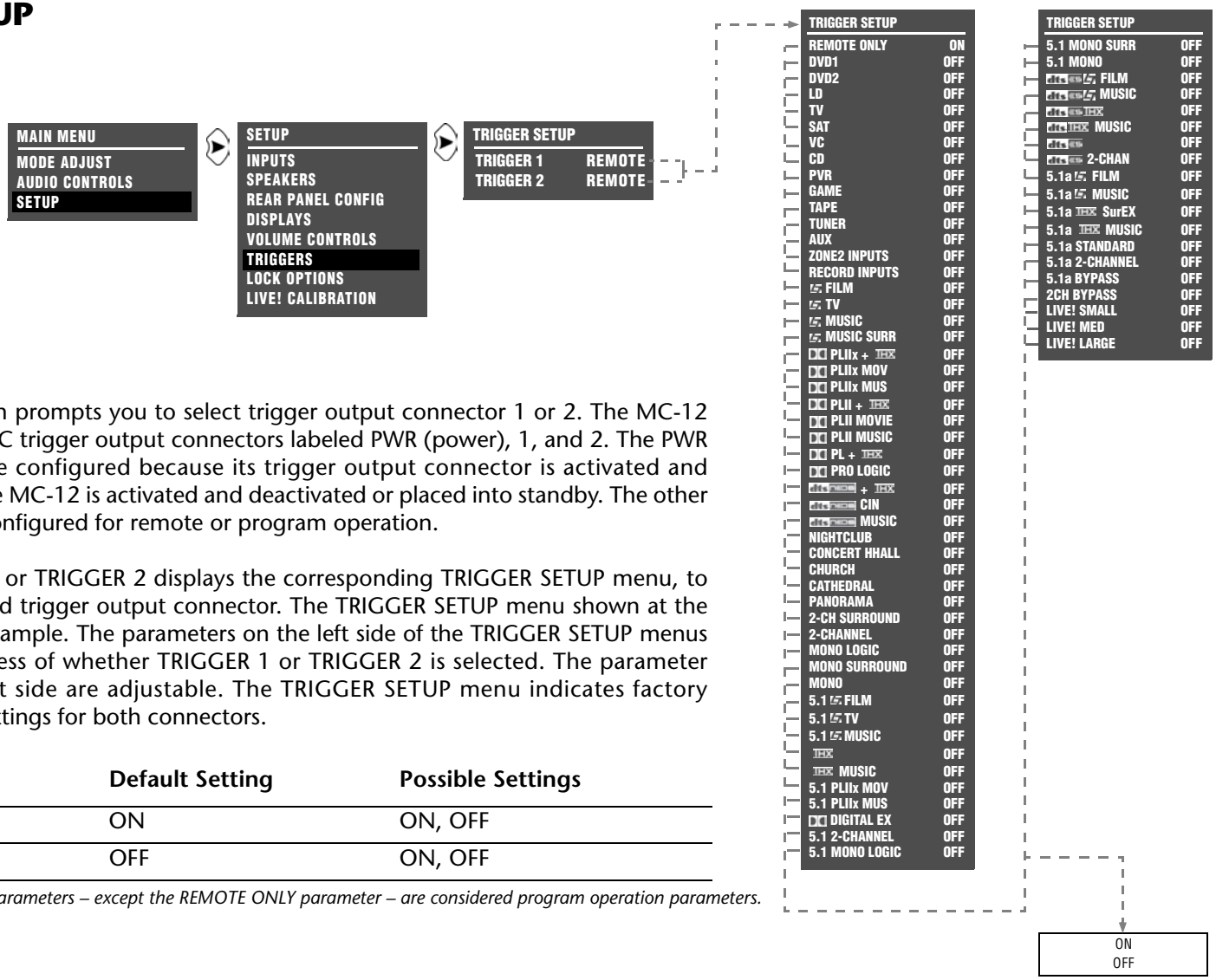
MAX VOLUME -80 to +12dB

SETUP ▶ VOLUME CONTROLS ▶ MAX VOLUME

Selects the maximum volume level for the Main Zone. When a value is selected, the MC-12 automatically sets Main Zone volume level to the selected value.

TRIGGER SETUP

SETUP ▶ **TRIGGERS**



The TRIGGERS option prompts you to select trigger output connector 1 or 2. The MC-12 includes three 12V DC trigger output connectors labeled PWR (power), 1, and 2. The PWR connector cannot be configured because its trigger output connector is activated and deactivated when the MC-12 is activated and deactivated or placed into standby. The other connectors can be configured for remote or program operation.

Selecting TRIGGER 1 or TRIGGER 2 displays the corresponding TRIGGER SETUP menu, to configure the selected trigger output connector. The TRIGGER SETUP menu shown at the right is used as an example. The parameters on the left side of the TRIGGER SETUP menus are identical regardless of whether TRIGGER 1 or TRIGGER 2 is selected. The parameter settings on the right side are adjustable. The TRIGGER SETUP menu indicates factory default parameter settings for both connectors.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
REMOTE ONLY	ON	ON, OFF
Program Operation	OFF	ON, OFF

All TRIGGER SETUP menu parameters – except the REMOTE ONLY parameter – are considered program operation parameters.

TRIGGER SETUP *(continued)*

REMOTE ONLY ON, OFF

SETUP ▸ TRIGGERS ▸ TRIGGER 1 OR TRIGGER 2 ▸ REMOTE ONLY

Configures the selected trigger output connector for remote operation. Select the ON setting to configure the selected connector for remote operation. Select the OFF setting to configure the selected connector for program operation. Refer to the Program Operation Parameter description below for more information.

When configured for remote operation, the connector labeled 1 can be activated and deactivated with the MODE + and – buttons when the Zone 2 command bank is activated, and the connector labeled 2 can be activated and deactivated with the MODE + and – buttons when the Record Zone command bank is activated.

Note:

When the REMOTE ONLY parameter is set to ON, all TRIGGER SETUP menu program operation parameter settings are ignored.

PROGRAM OPERATION PARAMETERS ON, OFF

SETUP ▸ TRIGGERS ▸ TRIGGER 1 OR TRIGGER 2 ▸ Program Operation Parameter

Configures the selected trigger output connector for program operation when the REMOTE ONLY parameter is set to OFF. Select the ON setting to associate the selected connector with the corresponding input(s) or listening mode(s).

When configured for program operation, the connector is activated and deactivated when the associated inputs or listening modes are activated and deactivated.

Note the following:

- Connectors can be associated with individual Main Zone inputs and listening modes, as well as the Zone 2 and Record Zone inputs.
- Connectors cannot be associated with individual Zone 2 and Record Zone inputs.
- Connectors can be associated with multiple inputs and listening modes at the same time.

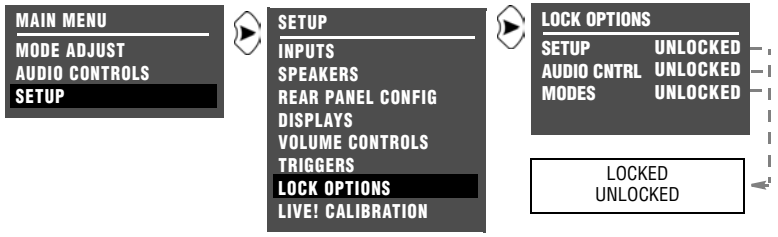
Note:

When the CUSTOM menu RESET MODE option is selected to restore the factory-default version of the selected listening mode, the corresponding TRIGGER SETUP menu program operation parameter is automatically set to OFF.

LOCK OPTIONS

SETUP ▶ LOCK OPTIONS

Displays the LOCK OPTIONS menu, which protects MODE ADJUST, AUDIO CONTROLS, and SETUP menu branch parameter settings from accidental changes.



Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
MODES	UNLOCKED	LOCKED, UNLOCKED
AUDIO CNTRL	UNLOCKED	LOCKED, UNLOCKED
SETUP	UNLOCKED	LOCKED, UNLOCKED

MODES

LOCKED, UNLOCKED

SETUP ▶ LOCK OPTIONS ▶ MODES

Protects MODE ADJUST menu branch settings from accidental changes. When LOCKED is selected, MODE ADJUST menu branch settings – including all listening mode menu settings – cannot be adjusted. When UNLOCKED is selected, all MODE ADJUST menu branch settings can be adjusted.

AUDIO CNTRL

LOCKED, UNLOCKED

SETUP ▶ LOCK OPTIONS ▶ AUDIO CNTRL

Protects AUDIO CONTROLS menu branch settings from accidental changes. When LOCKED is selected, AUDIO CONTROLS menu branch settings cannot be adjusted. When UNLOCKED is selected, AUDIO CONTROLS menu branch settings can be adjusted.

SETUP

LOCKED, UNLOCKED

SETUP ▶ LOCK OPTIONS ▶ SETUP

Protects SETUP menu branch settings from accidental changes. When LOCKED is selected, SETUP menu branch settings cannot be adjusted. When UNLOCKED is selected, SETUP menu branch settings can be adjusted.

Note the following:

- When the MODES parameter is set to LOCKED, the up and down arrows can still be used to adjust subwoofer output levels applied to the selected listening mode when the Shift command bank is activated.
- When the SETUP parameter is set to LOCKED, the 2CH button can still be used to adjust the MAIN ADV menu ANALOG BYPASS parameter setting when the Shift command bank is activated.
- When the SETUP parameter is set to LOCKED, the 7/5 button can still be used to adjust the MAIN ADV menu INPUT SELECT parameter setting when the Shift command bank is activated.

LIVE! CALIBRATION

SETUP ▶ LIVE! CALIBRATION

LIVE! (Lexicon Intelligent Variable Environment) is a proprietary mode designed to transform the way your listening room sounds. LIVE! uses a combination of microphones and digital signal processing (DSP) to enhance the room acoustics and create the illusion of a larger, more reverberant listening space. Use LIVE! to create a pleasing environment to practice or perform with a musical instrument, or to create a livelier ambience for any social activity. LIVE! CALIBRATION must be completed before using any of the LIVE! modes.

Notes:

You should run automatic calibration before running LIVE! CALIBRATION. See page 3-35 for instructions on running an automatic calibration.

Any changes to the LEVELS CALIBRATION or CROSSOVER SETUP in the SPEAKER SETUP menu will cause LIVE! to become uncalibrated.

Pressing the remote control 7/5 button will cause LIVE! to become uncalibrated.

LIVE! requires 2 microphones, available in a kit from your authorized Lexicon dealer. (If you already own the Lexicon 4-microphone kit, there is no need to purchase the 2-microphone kit) These microphones should be permanently mounted in the listening room. Performing LIVE! CALIBRATION with any microphones other than those in the kit can produce undesirable results.

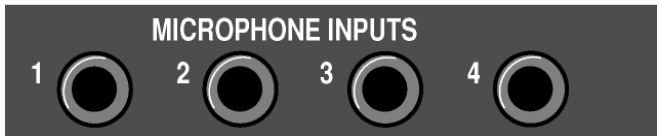
To achieve the proper LIVE! effect your system should be configured with a minimum of 4 speakers (Front L/R, and either side L/R or Rear L/R). If no subwoofer is present, the crossover setting of the Front L/R speakers should be set to FULL.

Proper microphone placement, both during calibration and when running LIVE!, is essential to achieving the desired results. Suggested microphone placement instructions and illustrations are included in this section.

The location of the sound source (piano, guitar, voices, etc.) is not critical. LIVE! will compensate for sounds that are closer to one microphone or another.

CONNECTING THE MICROPHONES

MC-12 Rear Panel



CAUTION!

- **The Lexicon microphones require careful handling. Dropping or otherwise physically abusing the microphones can cause calibration errors or irreparable damage to the microphone.**
- **The microphone wires also require careful handling. Do not sharply bend the wires or place objects on them.**

1. Make sure the MC-12 is powered off or in standby mode.
2. Connect the Lexicon microphones to the microphone input **1** and **2** connectors on the MC-12 rear panel shown above. Connector 1 is for the left microphone, connector 2 is for the right. Microphones connected to inputs 3 and 4 will be ignored during LIVE! calibration and operation. Make sure each microphone cable plug is fully inserted for a solid connection.

   During the microphone check, the microphones will be referred to as 1 and 2 based on the input connector to which the microphone is connected. You should label the microphones for troubleshooting purposes.
3. Power on the MC-12 or deactivate standby mode.

POSITIONING THE MICROPHONES FOR LIVE!

Refer to the microphone placement examples below to position the microphones for LIVE!

PROPER *microphone positioning for LIVE!*

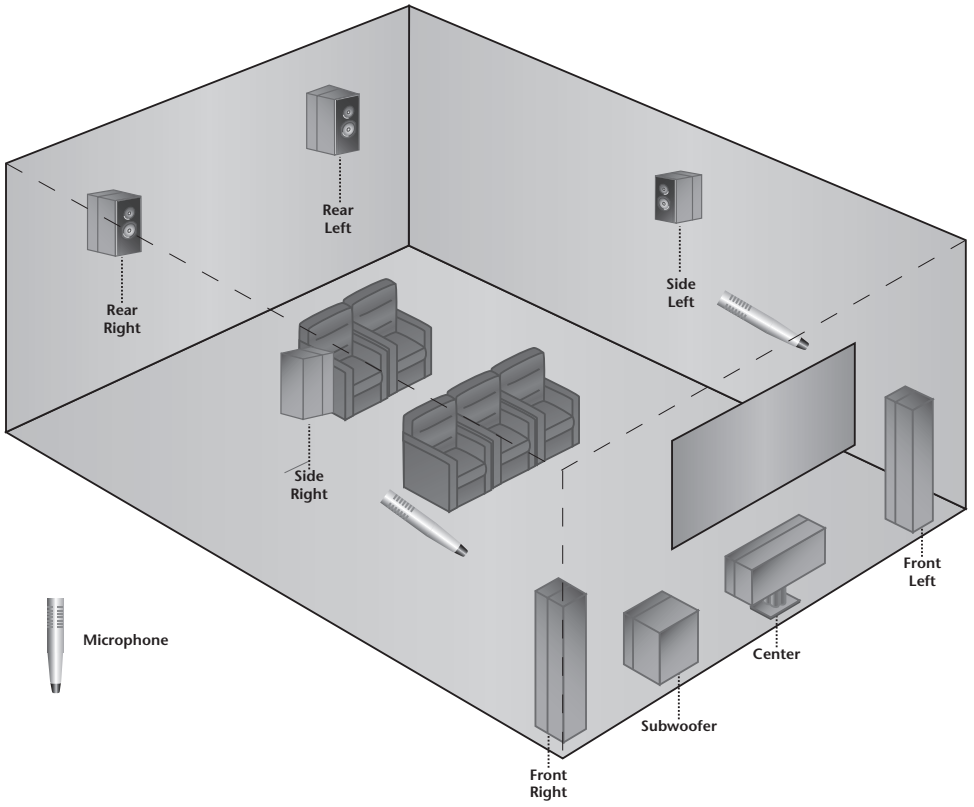
Position the microphones:

- ✓ On or near opposite side walls
- ✓ Approximately halfway between the front and side speakers
- ✓ At an approximate height between the waist and head of a standing person
- ✓ In a location unobstructed by furniture and other fixtures
- ✓ At least 2 feet (0.61m) from all speakers.

Note:

LIVE! can potentially create feedback in the system. The processing is designed to prevent this, but you should avoid placing the microphones too close to speakers.

The illustration to the right provides an example of proper microphone placement during LIVE! calibration and also for permanent location.

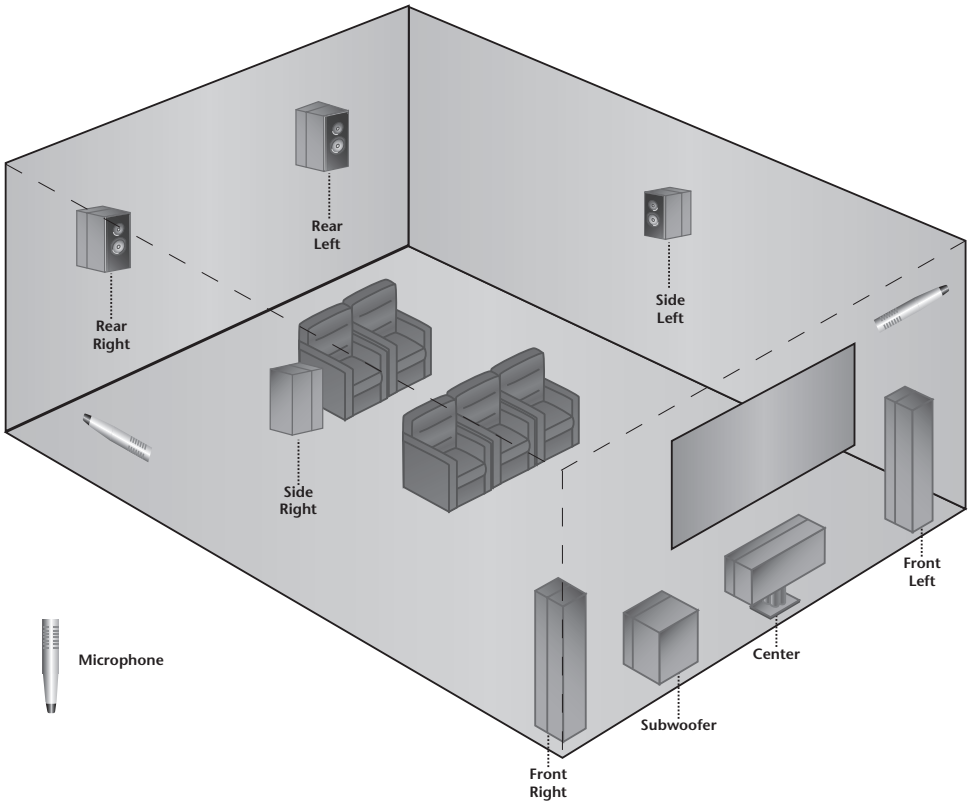


IMPROPER *microphone positioning for LIVE!*

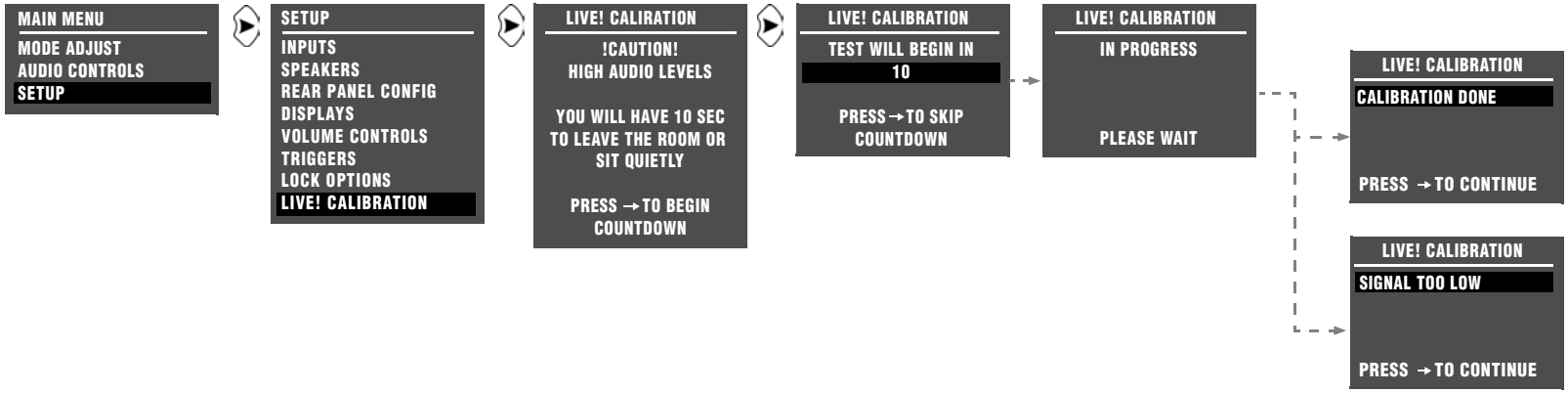
When positioning the microphones, do not:

- ✗ Place the microphones on the front or rear walls
- ✗ Place the microphones near the floor or ceiling
- ✗ Obstruct the microphones with furniture or other fixtures
- ✗ Place the microphones within 2 feet (0.61m) of any speaker.

The illustration to the right provides an example of improper microphone placement for LIVE! calibration or for a permanent location.



PERFORMING LIVE! CALIBRATION



Select SETUP ▸ LIVE! CALIBRATION as shown above.

- The !CAUTION! HIGH AUDIO LEVELS message indicates that the MC-12 generates loud calibration noise signals during LIVE! calibration. If the signals become too loud, press the ◂ arrow button to cancel LIVE! calibration. Press the ▸ arrow button to begin calibration.
- The countdown display notifies you that LIVE! calibration begins in 10 seconds. The primary reason for the 10 second delay is to give you time to leave the listening space before automatic calibration begins. If you choose to remain in the room, your movements could affect the calibration results. If you leave the room, you can return in about 3 minutes (the calibration procedure should be completed). Press the ▸ arrow button to skip the countdown and begin LIVE! calibration. The MC-12 automatically activates LIVE! calibration when the countdown ends.

When the LIVE! calibration is finished, the LIVE CALIBRATION results screen displays one of the two following messages.

- CALIBRATION DONE

  Indicates that no errors occurred during the calibration procedure.

- SIGNAL TOO LOW

  Indicates that the microphones failed to pick up sufficient calibration noise signals for calibration to complete.

After reading the message, press ▸ to continue.

If the SIGNAL TOO LOW message appeared:

- Examine microphone input connections to ensure that the microphones are properly connected to the MC-12 in microphone inputs 1 and 2 and that microphone cable plugs are fully inserted for a solid connection.
- Examine the speakers and the associated amplifier to ensure that speaker wires are connected and the amplifier is on.
- Run a Microphone Check to determine if a microphone has been damaged. See page 3-39 for instructions on checking the microphones.

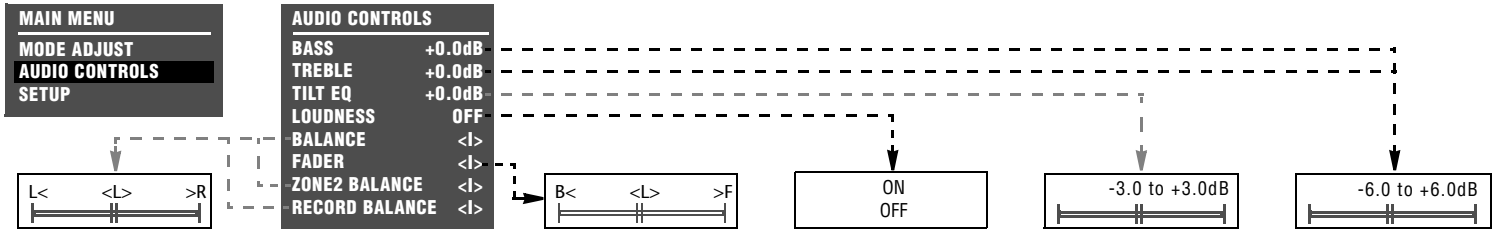
4

Audio Controls

Audio Controls.....4-2

AUDIO CONTROLS

Selecting the MAIN MENU AUDIO CONTROLS option opens the AUDIO CONTROLS menu, to customize the Main Zone, Zone 2, and Record Zone audio output connectors.



- The BASS, TREBLE, TILT EQ, LOUDNESS, BALANCE, and FADER parameters affect the Main Zone audio output connectors. This includes all Main Zone inputs and listening modes, except the 5.1a BYPASS and 2CH BYPASS listening modes.
- The ZONE2 BALANCE parameter affects the Zone 2 audio output connectors, including all Zone 2 inputs.
- The REC BALANCE parameter affects the Record Zone audio output connectors, including all Record Zone inputs.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
BASS	+0.0dB	-6.0 to +6.0dB
TREBLE	+0.0dB	-6.0 to +6.0dB
TILT EQ	+0.0dB	-3.0 to +3.0dB
LOUDNESS	OFF	ON, OFF
BALANCE	<I>	L< to <I> to >R
FADER	<I>	B< to <I> to >F
ZONE2 BALANCE	<I>	L< to <I> to >R
REC BALANCE	<I>	B< to <I> to >F

AUDIO CONTROLS menu parameter descriptions begin on the next page.

BASS

-6.0dB to +6.0dB

AUDIO CONTROLS ▸ BASS

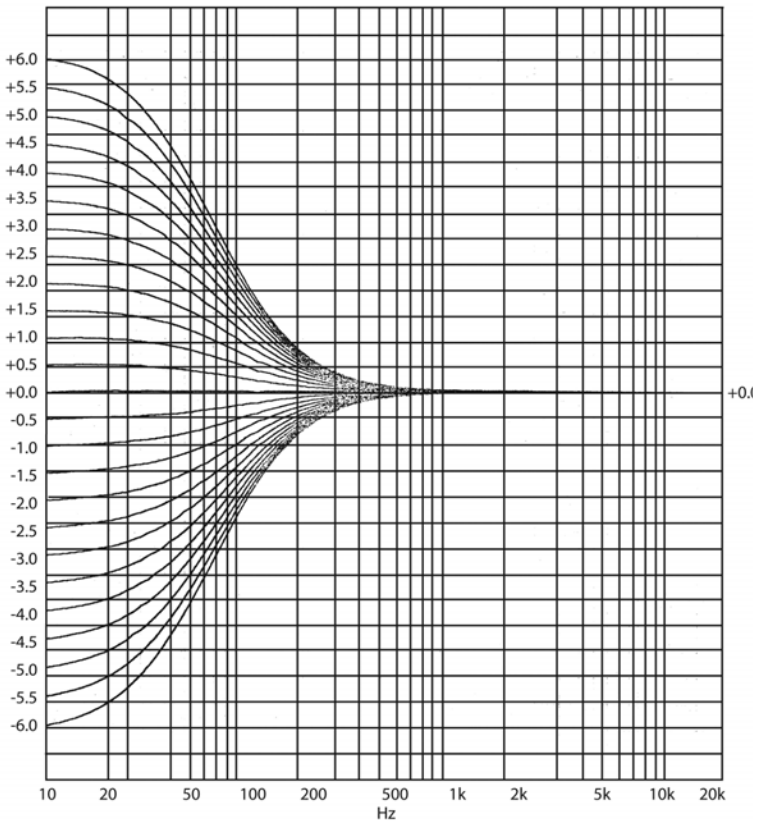
Controls the amount of low-frequency boost or cut applied to the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Front L/R, Center, LFE, and Subwoofer L/R. The graph to the right indicates the frequency response of all BASS parameter settings.

To control the bass from the remote control:

Press the **Shift** button:

- Press the **CD** button to increase the BASS parameter setting in 0.5dB increments.
- Press the **TAPE** button to decrease the BASS parameter setting in 0.5dB increments.
- Press the **OSD** button to set the BASS, TREBLE, and TILT EQ parameters to +0.0dB.

BASS



The BASS parameter controls the amount of low-frequency boost or cut applied to the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Front L/R, Center, LFE, and Subwoofer L/R.

TREBLE

-6.0dB to +6.0dB

AUDIO CONTROLS ▶ TREBLE

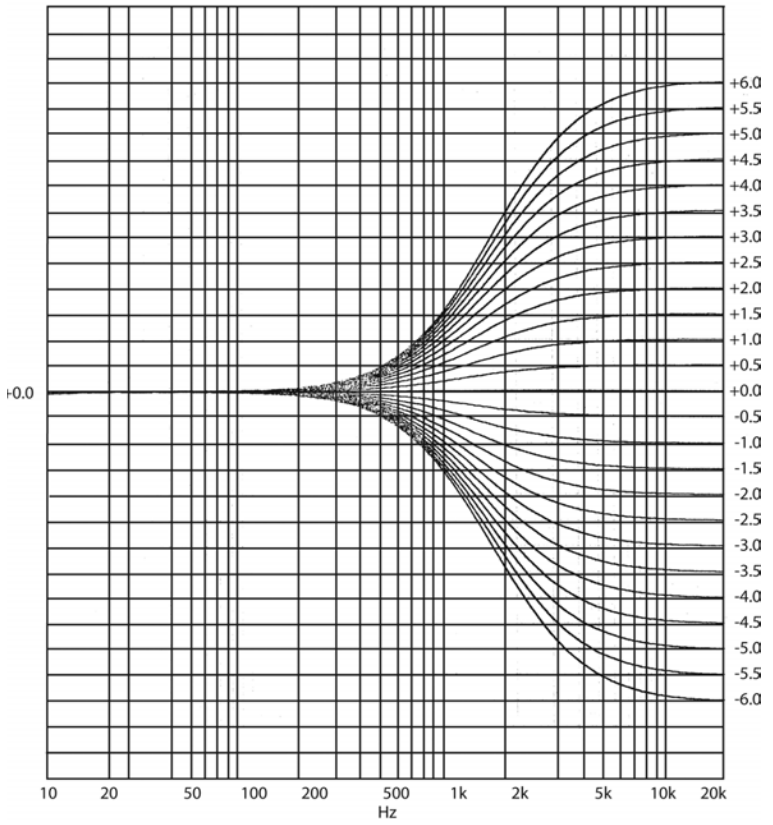
Controls the amount of boost or cut applied to the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Front L/R and Center. The graph shown at the right indicates the frequency response of all TREBLE parameter settings.

To control the treble from the remote control:

Press the **Shift** button:

- Press the **PVR** button to increase the TREBLE parameter setting in 0.5dB increments.
- Press the **TUNER** button to decrease the TREBLE parameter setting in 0.5dB increments.
- Press the **OSD** button to set the BASS, TREBLE, and TILT EQ parameters to +0.0dB.

TREBLE



The TREBLE parameter controls the amount of boost or cut applied to the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Front L/R and Center.

TILT EQ

-3.0 to +3.0

AUDIO CONTROLS ▸ TILT EQ

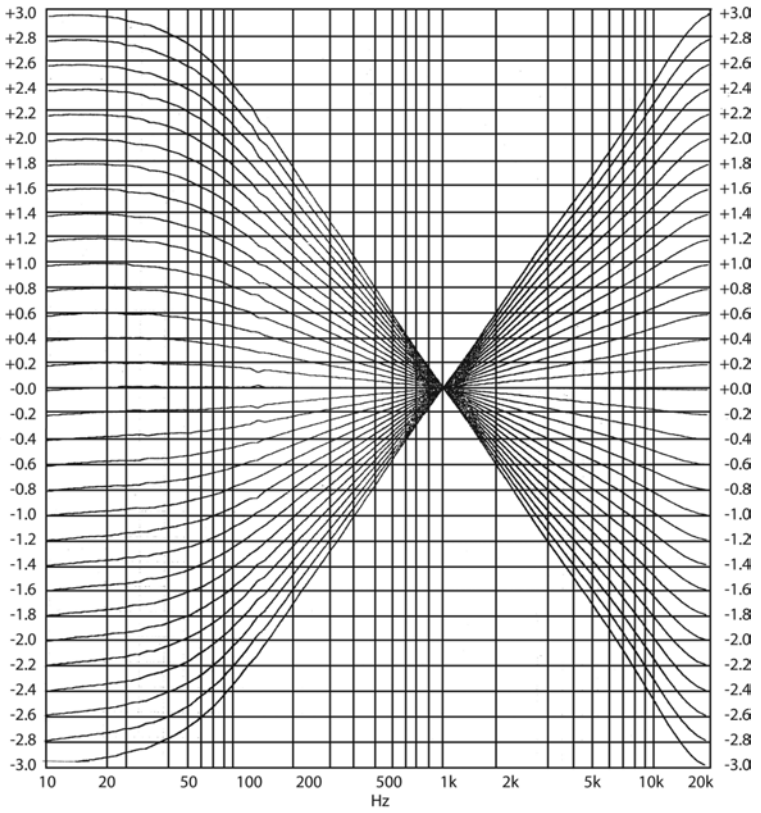
Controls the amount of tilt equalization applied to the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Front L/R, Center, LFE, and Subwoofer L/R. This parameter setting affects the entire frequency spectrum with a hinge point at 1kHz. As the setting increases, frequencies higher than 1kHz are boosted while frequencies lower than 1kHz are simultaneously cut. As the setting decreases, frequencies higher than 1kHz are cut while frequencies lower than 1kHz are simultaneously boosted. The graph shown at the right indicates the frequency response of all TILT EQ parameter settings.

To control the tilt EQ from the remote control:

Press the **Shift** button:

- Press the **GAME** button to increase the TILT EQ parameter setting in 0.5dB increments.
- Press the **AUX** button to decrease the TILT EQ parameter setting in 0.5dB increments.
- Press the **OSD** button to set the BASS, TREBLE, and TILT EQ parameters to +0.0dB.

TILT EQ



The TILT EQ parameter controls the amount of tilt equalization applied to the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Front L/R, Center, LFE, and Subwoofer L/R.

LOUDNESS

ON, OFF

AUDIO CONTROLS ▶ **LOUDNESS**

Controls the amount of low-frequency boost that is automatically applied to the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Front L/R, Center, LFE, and Subwoofer L/R. When ON is selected, loudness compensation is automatically applied based on volume level. As volume level increases, the amount of low-frequency boost automatically decreases. The loudness contour is optimized for input sources calibrated to THX reference levels. When OFF is selected, no loudness compensation is applied.

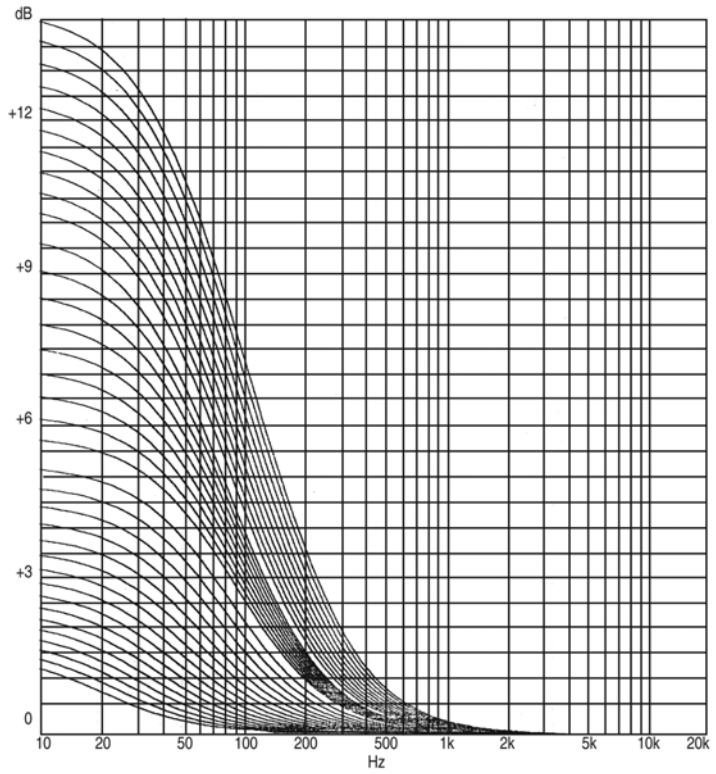
The graph shown at the right indicates the frequency response that is automatically applied when the LOUDNESS parameter is set to ON and Main Zone volume level is adjusted.

To control the loudness from the remote control:

Press the **Shift** button:

- Press the **TV** button to turn the LOUDNESS to on.
- Press the **SAT** button to turn the LOUDNESS off.

LOUDNESS



The LOUDNESS parameter controls the amount of low-frequency boost that is automatically applied to the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Front L/R, Center, LFE, and Subwoofer L/R.

BALANCE

L< <I> >R

AUDIO CONTROLS ▶ BALANCE

Controls the left-to-right balance of the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Front L/R.

To control the balance from the remote control:

Press the **Shift** button:

- Press the **MENU** button to center the Main Zone balance.
- Press the ◀ or ▶ arrow buttons to adjust the Main Zone balance left and right.

FADER

B< <I> >F

AUDIO CONTROLS ▶ FADER

Controls the front-to-back balance of the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Front L/R.

To control the fade from the remote control:

Press the **Shift** button:

- Press the **MENU** button to center the Main Zone fader.
- Press the ▲ or ▼ arrow buttons to adjust the Main Zone fader backward and forward.

ZONE2 BALANCE

L< <I> >R

AUDIO CONTROLS ▶ ZONE2 BALANCE

Controls the left-to-right balance of the Zone 2 audio output connectors.

To control the Zone 2 balance from the remote control:

Press the **ZONE** button:

- Press the **MENU** button to center the Zone2 balance.
- Press the ◀ or ▶ arrow buttons to adjust the Zone2 balance left and right.

RECORD BALANCE

L< <I> >R

AUDIO CONTROLS ▶ RECORD BALANCE

Controls the left-to-right balance of the Record Zone analog audio output connectors.

To control the balance from the remote control:

Press the **REC** button:

- Press the **MENU** button to center the Main Zone balance.
- Press the ◀ or ▶ arrow buttons to adjust the record balance left and right.

5

Mode Adjust

Mode Adjust 5-2

Listening Mode Activation.....5-2

Preferred Listening Mode Selection Parameters 5-3
Mode Buttons 5-4
Mode Family Selection Buttons 5-4

Listening Mode Descriptions 5-5

Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions.....5-37

Mode – Parameter Relationships 5-45

** These listening mode names differ depending on the current input source, speaker setup, and parameter settings. Refer to the Listening Mode Descriptions beginning on page 5-5 for more information.*

MODE ADJUST

Selecting MAIN MENU ▸ MODE ADJUST displays the MODE ADJUST menu, to select a listening mode. Selecting a listening mode opens the corresponding listening mode menu, to customize the selected listening mode. These adjustments are applied when the listening mode is next activated.

All listening mode menus are shown in the Appendix. The parameters on the left side of the menus differ from listening mode to listening mode. The parameter settings on the right side are adjustable. Factory-default parameter settings are shown for each listening mode.

When the MODE ADJUST menu opens, the activated listening mode is highlighted. To activate a different listening mode, you must use one of the methods described in "Listening Mode Activation" below.

LISTENING MODE ACTIVATION

The MC-12 allows listening mode activation in the Main Zone. Listening modes are available for 2-channel, Dolby Digital, DTS-ES, analog, and microphone sources. In some cases, the MC-12 automatically activates a listening mode in response to certain commands. For this reason, it is important to understand the three methods through which listening mode activation occurs.

Listening modes activation occurs through:

- The INPUT SETUP menu preferred listening mode selection parameters.
- The front panel or remote control Mode ▲ and ▼ buttons.
- The remote control mode family selection buttons (THX, Dolby Digital, LOGIC 7, TVL, DTS, and MUSIC).

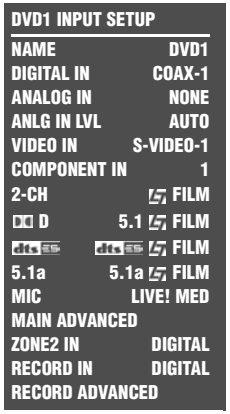
PREFERRED LISTENING MODE SELECTION PARAMETERS

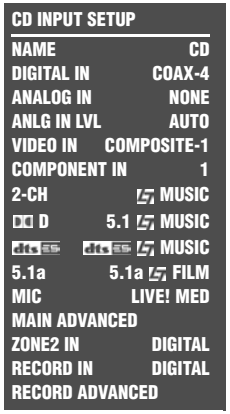
You can select five preferred listening modes for each Main Zone input, including one listening mode each for 2-channel, Dolby Digital, DTS-ES, 5.1-channel analog, and microphone sources. The table below indicates the INPUT SETUP menu parameters that can be used to select preferred listening modes.

Preferred Listening Mode Selection Parameters

2-CH	Selects a preferred listening mode for 2-channel sources
DD D	Selects a preferred listening mode for Dolby Digital sources
dts ES	Selects a preferred listening mode for DTS-ES sources
5.1a	Selects a preferred listening mode for 5.1-channel analog sources
MIC	Selects a preferred LIVE! listening mode for microphone sources.

When a preferred listening mode is selected, the MC-12 automatically activates that listening mode whenever a new input is selected or an appropriate input source is present. For example, the DVD1 and CD INPUT SETUP menu preferred listening mode selection parameters are set as shown at the top of the next column.





- If the DVD1 input is selected while a 2-channel source is present, the MC-12 automatically activates the L7 FILM listening mode. If a 5.1-channel analog source becomes present, the MC-12 automatically activates the 5.1a L7 FILM listening mode.
- If the CD input is selected while a Dolby Digital source is present, the MC-12 automatically activates the 5.1 L7 MUSIC listening mode. If the DVD1 input is then selected while a DTS-ES source is present, the MC-12 automatically activates the DTS or DTS-ES L7 FILM listening mode.

Note:

Refer to the Selecting Preferred Listening Modes section that begins on page 3-12 for more information.

MODE BUTTONS

Use the front panel and remote control Mode buttons to audition listening modes with the current Main Zone input source. Press the Mode + or – button to scroll up or down through the available listening modes for the current Main Zone input source. For example, if a 2-channel source is present in the Main Zone, the Mode buttons can be used to audition 2-channel listening modes.

Scrolling occurs in the order shown on the MODE ADJUST menu. The selected listening mode appears in the bottom-left corner of the Main Zone two-line status. The selected listening mode is automatically activated when scrolling stops.

MODE FAMILY SELECTION BUTTONS

The remote control mode family selection buttons select a listening mode within the corresponding mode family. Pressing a mode family selection button activates the most appropriate listening mode for the current Main Zone input source. For example, pressing the L7 button while a 2-channel source is present in the Main Zone activates the L7 FILM listening mode.

The table below indicates the listening modes associated with each mode family selection button.

	Input Source			
Button	**2-Channel**	**5.1 Dolby Digital**	**DTS-ES**	**5.1a Channel Analog**
THX	DOLBY PLIIx + THX†	THX*	DTS-ES THX*	5.1a THX*
DD	DOLBY PLIIx MOVIE†	Dolby DIGITAL*	N/A**	N/A**
L7	L7 FILM	5.1 L7 FILM	DTS-ES L7 FILM*	5.1a L7 FILM
TVL	L7 TV	5.1 L7 TV	N/A**	N/A**
dts	DTS Neo:6 CIN††	N/A**	DTS-ES*	N/A**
MUSIC	L7 MUSIC	5.1 L7 MUSIC	DTS-ES L7 MUSIC*	5.1a L7 MUSIC

* *These listening mode names differ depending on the current input source, speaker setup, and parameter settings. Refer to the Listening Mode Descriptions section that begins on the next page for more information.*

** *The MODE SELECTION NOT AVAILABLE message appears on the on-screen and front panel displays when the selected listening mode family does not offer a listening mode for the current Main Zone input source.*

† *When a 7-speaker configuration is in use, the DPLIIx variant of this mode is loaded.*

†† *The MODE SELECTION NOT AVAILABLE message appears on the on-screen and front panel displays if the input has a sampling rate of 96kHz. This includes analog inputs converted to 96kHz.*

LISTENING MODE DESCRIPTIONS

The MC-12 offers an assortment of listening modes for 2-channel, Dolby Digital, DTS-ES, analog, and microphone sources. Listening mode descriptions begin below and continue in the order shown on the MODE ADJUST menu. The table included with each description indicates the corresponding listening mode menu parameters, as well as their factory-default and possible parameter settings. All listening mode menus are shown in the Appendix. Descriptions of the listening mode parameters begin on page 5-37.

FILM

MODE ADJUST ▶ FILM

This listening mode designed for enhanced playback of 2-channel stereo or matrix-encoded film sources.

LOGIC 7 FILM is a proprietary Lexicon listening mode that derives seven channels from 2-channel input sources. Logic 7 also derives full-frequency stereo surround channels that realistically increase the perceived width, length and sense of envelopment of the listening space. Logic 7 provides remarkable improvement compared to other decoders.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
AUTO AZIMUTH	ON	ON, OFF
VOCAL ENHANCE	+0.0dB	+6.0dB, +3.0dB, +0.0dB
RE-EQUALIZER	ON	ON, OFF
SOUND STAGE	REAR	FRONT, NEUTRAL, REAR
5 SPKR ENHANCE	ON	ON, OFF
BASS ENHANCE	OFF	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	7.0kHz	500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
REAR DLY OFFSET	15ms	OFF, 1 to 30ms
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for descriptions.

TV

MODE ADJUST ▶ TV

This listening mode is designed for playback of 2-channel stereo or matrix-encoded television broadcast sources.

LOGIC 7 TV is a proprietary Lexicon listening mode based on the LOGIC 7 FILM listening mode, but specifically tailored for broadcast sources.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
AUTO AZIMUTH	ON	ON, OFF
VOCAL ENHANCE	+0.0dB	+6.0dB, +3.0dB, +0.0dB
FRONT STEERING	FILM	OFF, MSURR, MUSIC, FILM
RE-EQUALIZER	OFF	ON, OFF
SOUND STAGE	REAR	FRONT, NEUTRAL, REAR
5 SPKR ENHANCE	ON	ON, OFF
BASS ENHANCE	OFF	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	7.0kHz	500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
REAR DLY OFFSET	15ms	OFF, 1 to 30ms
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

MUSIC

MODE ADJUST ▶ MUSIC

This listening mode is designed for playback of 2-channel stereo or matrix-encoded music sources.

LOGIC 7 MUSIC is a proprietary Lexicon listening mode based on the LOGIC 7 FILM listening mode, but specifically tailored for music sources. .

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
VOCAL ENHANCE	+0.0dB	+6.0dB, +3.0dB, +0.0dB
FRONT STEERING	MUSIC	OFF, MSURR, MUSIC, FILM
SOUND STAGE	NEUTRAL	FRONT, NEUTRAL, REAR
5 SPKR ENHANCE	ON	ON, OFF
BASS ENHANCE	OFF	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	7.0kHz	500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
REAR DLY OFFSET	15ms	OFF, 1 to 30ms
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

MUSIC SURR

MODE ADJUST ▶ MUSIC SURR

This listening mode is designed for playback of 2-channel stereo music sources recorded in real spaces and for playback of recordings that contain added reverb. It is recommended for classical music sources, which are often recorded in real spaces with added reverb to enhance the stereo mix.

LOGIC 7 MUSIC SURR is a proprietary Lexicon listening mode that is similar to the MUSIC SURROUND listening mode in other Lexicon products. Logic 7 extracts ambient sounds from the input source and sends these sounds to all speakers. Ambient sounds are heard from all directions, creating a realistic playback presentation that simulates what listeners experience in real spaces.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
VOCAL ENHANCE	+0.0dB	+6.0dB, +3.0dB, +0.0dB
FRONT STEERING	MSURR	OFF, MSURR, MUSIC, FILM
SOUND STAGE	NEUTRAL	FRONT, NEUTRAL, REAR
5 SPKR ENHANCE	ON	ON, OFF
BASS ENHANCE	OFF	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	7.0kHz	500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
REAR DLY OFFSET	15ms	OFF, 1 to 30ms
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

DD PLIIx + THX & DD PLII + THX

MODE ADJUST ▶ DD PLIIx + THX OR MODE ADJUST ▶ DD PLII + THX

The Dolby PLIIx + THX and Dolby PLII + THX listening modes are designed to playback 7.1 or 5.1 discrete channels decoded from 2-channel Dolby Surround-encoded sources. The seven or five main channels are full frequency. The .1 channel, often referred to as LFE information, has a limited frequency range of up to 120Hz. The PLIIx listening mode is only available when the front, side and rear speakers are present.

Note:

The PLIIx mode does not appear in the list of available listening modes if either the side or rear speakers are missing from the configuration.

The modes are recommended for home theaters with THX-certified speakers. Dolby PLII(x) + THX encoding:

- Apply THX re-equalization to simulate high-frequency rolloffs that occur in movie theaters. Most films are mixed for movie theaters, and might sound too bright when played back in home theaters without re-equalization.
- Apply THX timbre matching to minimize timbre differences between the front and surround channels, which results in smoother sound movements between them.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
RE-EQUALIZER	ON	ON, OFF
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

DD PLIIx MOV & DD PLII MOVIE

MODE ADJUST ▶ DD PLIIx MOV OR MODE ADJUST ▶ DD PLII MOVIE

The Dolby PLIIx MOV (MOVIE) and Dolby PLII MOVIE listening modes are designed to playback 7.1 or 5.1 discrete channels decoded from 2-channel Dolby Surround-encoded film sources. The seven or five main channels are full frequency. The .1 channel, often referred to as LFE information, has a limited frequency range of up to 120Hz. The PLIIx listening mode is only available when the front, side and rear speakers are present.

Note:

The PLIIx MOV mode does not appear in the list of available listening modes if either the side or rear speakers are missing from the configuration.

Dolby PLII MOVIE and Dolby PLIIx MOV modes:

- Are designed for playback of Dolby Surround-encoded sources.
- Provide impressive enhancement compared to Dolby Pro Logic decoding.

Dolby PLII MOVIE decodes five channels from Dolby Surround-encoded sources. Dolby PLIIx MOV decodes seven channels from Dolby Surround-encoded sources.

Parameter	
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

DD PLIIx MUS & DD PLII MUSIC

MODE ADJUST ▶ DD PLIIx MUS OR MODE ADJUST ▶ DD PLII MUSIC

The Dolby PLIIx MUS (MUSIC) and Dolby PLII MUSIC listening modes are designed to playback 7.1 or 5.1 discrete channels decoded from 2-channel music sources. The seven or five main channels are full frequency. The .1 channel, often referred to as LFE information, has a limited frequency range of up to 120Hz. The PLIIx listening mode is only available when the front, side and rear speakers are present.

Note:

The PLIIx MUS mode does not appear in the list of available listening modes if either the side or rear speakers are missing from the configuration.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
PANORAMA	OFF	ON, OFF
CTR WIDTH	3	MIN, 1 to 6, MAX
DIMENSION	NEUTRAL	FRONT, NEUTRAL, REAR
SURROUND DLY	10ms	0 to 15ms
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

DD PL + THX

MODE ADJUST ▶ DD PL + THX

This mode is designed for playback of Dolby Surround-encoded sources and decodes four channels: three front channels and one mono surround channel with a high-frequency rolloff above 7kHz. This mode is recommended for home theaters with THX-certified speakers. Dolby PL + THX mode:

- Applies THX re-equalization to simulate high-frequency rolloffs that occur in movie theaters. Most films are mixed for movie theaters, and may sound too bright when played back in home theaters without re-equalization.
- Applies THX timbre matching to minimize timbre differences between the front and surround channels, which results in smoother sound movements between them.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
RE-EQUALIZER	ON	ON, OFF
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

PRO LOGIC

MODE ADJUST ▶ PRO LOGIC

The Dolby PRO LOGIC mode is designed for playback of Dolby Surround-encoded sources. It decodes four channels from Dolby Surround-encoded sources, and uses a mono surround channel with a high-frequency rolloff above 7kHz.

This mode is useful for comparison purposes, particularly with the L7 FILM, Dolby PLIIx MOVIE and DTS Neo:6 CIN listening mode.

Parameter

OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

DTS NEO:6 + THX

MODE ADJUST ▶ DTS NEO:6 + THX

This mode is designed for playback of matrix-encoded digital stereo film sources. DTS NEO:6 derives six channels when both side and rear speakers are present (rear channels will be in parallel). It derives five channels when only side or rear speakers are present.

In addition to THX processing, THX re-equalization is applied to simulate high-frequency rolloffs that occur in movie theaters. Most films are mixed for movie theaters, and may sound too bright when played back in home theaters without re-equalization.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
RE-EQUALIZER	ON	ON, OFF
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

DTS Neo:6 CIN & DTS Neo:6 MUSIC

MODE ADJUST ▶ DTS Neo:6 CIN OR DTS Neo:6 MUSIC

These modes are designed for playback of matrix-encoded digital stereo film or music sources. DTS Neo:6 derives six channels when both side and rear speakers are present (rear channels will be in parallel). It derives five channels when only side or rear speakers are present. The LFE channel is generated through bass management in the MC-12.

Parameter

OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

Note the following:

- The DTS Neo:6 CIN or MUSIC listening modes cannot be assigned as preferred listening modes for 2-channel sources. However, when the 2-CH parameter is set to USE LAST, the MC-12 automatically activates the DTS Neo:6 CIN or MUSIC listening mode if the mode was active the last time a 2-channel source was present.
- The MC-12 will not automatically activate a DTS Neo:6 listening mode unless a 44.1kHz or 48kHz PCM digital source is present. The DTS Neo:6 listening modes are not available with 88.2kHz or 96kHz, Dolby Digital, or analog sources.
- The DTS Neo:6 MUSIC listening mode can be activated with the front-panel or remote control Mode buttons. The DTS Neo:6 CIN listening mode can also activated with the remote control DTS button when a 2-channel input source is present.

NIGHTCLUB

MODE ADJUST ▶ NIGHTCLUB

The NIGHTCLUB mode is designed for playback of "dry" music sources that benefit from the addition of room reflections, especially music sources that lack ambience in the recording. The NIGHTCLUB mode generates early reflections and sends them to the front, side and rear channels to simulate small, intimate listening spaces.

The NIGHTCLUB mode is a superior room simulation listening mode because it uses a proprietary reverb algorithm inherited from Lexicon professional products.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
CENTER DEPTH	11	0 to 18
SPEECH DETECT	ON	ON, OFF
SIZE	5m	4 to 20m
LIVENESS	196ms	30ms to 20.2s
PRE-DELAY	5ms	OFF, 1 to 100ms
ROLLOFF	9.0kHz	500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
EFFECT LVL	+3dB	-12 to +6dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

CONCERT HALL

MODE ADJUST ▶ CONCERT HALL

The CONCERT HALL mode generates early reflections and sends them to the front, side and rear channels to simulate large listening spaces.

The CONCERT HALL mode is a superior room simulation listening mode because it uses a proprietary reverb algorithm inherited from Lexicon professional products.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
CENTER DEPTH	12	0 to 18
SPEECH DETECT	ON	ON, OFF
SIZE	20m	4 to 20m
LIVENESS	1.72s	30ms to 20.2s
PRE-DELAY	OFF	OFF, 1 to 100ms
ROLLOFF	2.4kHz	500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
EFFECT LVL	-2dB	-12 to +6dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

CHURCH

MODE ADJUST ▶ CHURCH

The CHURCH mode uses a reverb algorithm to emphasize the rich, smooth, reverberant decay characteristic of small and medium listening spaces with long reverberation time relative to their size, such as churches and chambers.

The CHURCH mode is a superior room simulation listening mode because it uses a proprietary reverb algorithm inherited from Lexicon professional products.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
CENTER DEPTH	5	0 to 18
SPEECH DETECT	ON	ON, OFF
SIZE*	20m	4 to 30m
MID RT*	1.56s	24ms to 24.3s
BASS RT*	1.87s	5ms to 48.6s
PRE-DELAY	24ms	OFF, 1 to 100ms
ROLLOFF	2.4kHz	500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
EFFECT LVL	-3dB	-12 to +6dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

** BASS RT, MID RT, and SIZE parameter settings are interdependent, meaning that the full parameter range might not be available depending on the other parameter settings.*

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

CATHEDRAL

MODE ADJUST ▶ CATHEDRAL

The CATHEDRAL mode is similar to the CHURCH listening mode. It uses a reverb algorithm to emphasize the rich, smooth, reverberant decay characteristic of large listening spaces with long reverberation time relative to their size, such as cathedrals.

The CATHEDRAL mode is a superior room simulation listening mode because it uses a proprietary reverb algorithm inherited from Lexicon professional products.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
CENTER DEPTH	12	0 to 18
SPEECH DETECT	ON	ON, OFF
SIZE*	30m	4 to 30m
MID RT*	3.72s	24ms to 24.3s
BASS RT*	4.47s	5ms to 48.6s
PRE-DELAY	23ms	OFF, 1 to 100ms
ROLLOFF	3.1kHz	500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
EFFECT LVL	-8dB	-12 to +6dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

* *BASS RT, MID RT, and SIZE parameter settings are interdependent, meaning that the full parameter range might not be available depending on the other parameter settings.*

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

PANORAMA

MODE ADJUST ▶ PANORAMA

The PANORAMA mode is designed for playback of stereo and matrix-encoded sources. PANORAMA uses proprietary Lexicon algorithms to move the stereo image outward from the front speakers, producing a wider stereo field with greater depth.

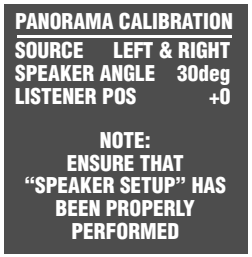
Sound quality depends on proper location of the listening position and front speakers. When the front speakers are positioned close to either side of the display device, the effect is produced over a wider area than when the front speakers are positioned at a large angle from the display device.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
EFFECT LVL	+4dB	-12 to +6dB
BASS CONTENT	STEREO	BINAURL, MONO, STEREO
LOW FREQ WIDTH	+0	-25 to +25dB
SURR ROLLOFF	3.1kHz	500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
REAR DLY OFFSET	15ms	OFF, 1 to 30ms
INPUT BALANCE	<I>	L< to <I> to >R
CALIBRATION	Refer to next column	
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

PANORAMA CALIBRATION

MODE ADJUST ▸ **PANORAMA** ▸ **CALIBRATION**



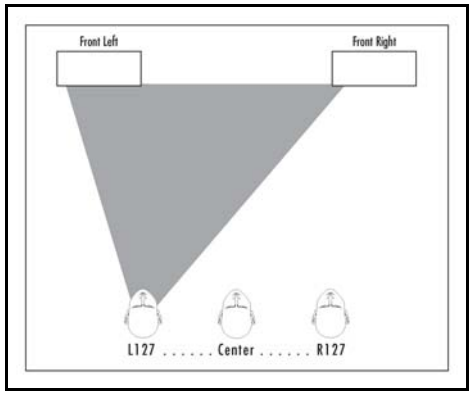
Select PANORAMA ▸ CALIBRATION to open the PANORAMA CALIBRATION menu shown to the left, to calibrate the PANORAMA listening mode. **This listening mode must be calibrated to take full advantage of its effects.**

For best results, you should center the primary listening position between the front left and right speakers as shown in illustration B at the top of the next page (center). Otherwise, the PANORAMA listening mode will be calibrated with varying results.

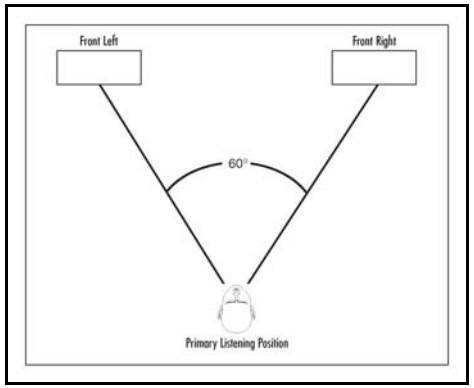
An external calibration source is required to calibrate the PANORAMA listening mode. You should select a familiar stereo source.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
SOURCE	LEFT & RIGHT	RIGHT, LEFT & RIGHT, LEFT
SPEAKER ANGLE	30deg	10deg to 90deg
LISTENER POS	+0	-127 to +127

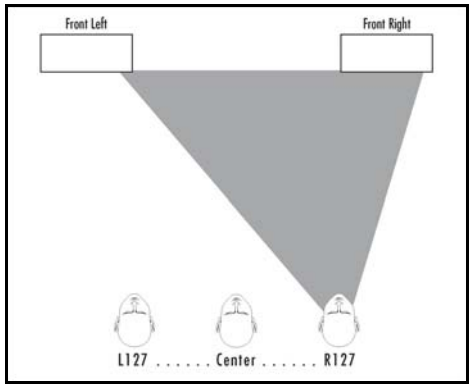
See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.



A



B



C

To calibrate the PANORAMA listening mode:

1. Remove all obstructions between the speakers and the primary listening position.
2. Make sure the distances between the speakers and the primary listening position are properly measured. To do this, select one of the following options.
   - Select the AUTO SPEAKER SETUP menu DISTANCES option to have the MC-12 automatically calibrate speaker distances.
   - Measure the distance between the primary listening position and the front baffle of each speaker. Then, set the corresponding SPEAKER DISTANCES menu parameters to the closest available value.
3. Sit in the primary listening position. If the primary listening position is not centered between the front left and right speakers as shown in illustration B (above), set the PANORAMA CALIBRATION ▸ LISTENER POS parameter to compensate for the difference using the remote control ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons. Each increment within the –127 to +127 parameter range represents about one-third of an inch. Illustration A shows the left of center position. Illustration C shows the right of center position
4. Set the SOURCE parameter to RIGHT.
5. Begin playback of the external calibration source.
6. When playback of the external calibration source is in progress, set the SPEAKER ANGLE parameter so the sound is not heard in the right ear.
7. To confirm the LISTENER POS and SPEAKER ANGLE parameter settings, set the SOURCE parameter to LEFT & RIGHT. If the PANORAMA listening mode is properly calibrated, the sound should be perceived to come from all around the primary listening position. If not, go back to Step 1 and repeat the calibration procudure.

2-CH SURROUND

MODE ADJUST ▶ 2-CH SURROUND

This mode, designed for playback of stereo sources, sends the left channel to Front, Side, and Rear Left channels and the right channel to Front, Side and Rear Right channels, and sums the Left and Right for the center. It is recommended for background music.

Parameter	
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

2-CHANNEL

MODE ADJUST ▶ 2-CHANNEL

This mode, designed for playback of stereo sources, sends the left and right channels to the Front L/R and Subwoofer channels. It is recommended for two-speaker playback with subwoofers and for comparison purposes with other listening modes.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
SUB LEVEL	+0dB	OFF, -30dB to +12dB
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

MONO LOGIC

MODE ADJUST ▶ MONO LOGIC

This mode, designed for playback of mono sources, uses proprietary Lexicon reverb algorithms to realistically expand mono sources to use all channels. This dramatically increases the perceived width and sense of envelopment of the listening space.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
EFFECT LVL	-9dB	-12dB to +6dB
ACADEMY FILTER	ON	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	3.1kHz	500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

Note:

When the remote control Shift command bank is activated, pressing the TVL button activates the MONO LOGIC listening mode for 2-channel sources.

MONO SURROUND

MODE ADJUST ▶ MONO SURROUND

This mode, designed for playback of mono sources, sends the mono source to all channels.

Parameter	
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

MONO

MODE ADJUST ▶ MONO

This mode, designed for playback of mono sources, sends mono sources to the center channel.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
SUB LEVEL	+0dB	OFF, -30dB to +12dB
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1 L7 FILM

MODE ADJUST ▶ 5.1 L7 FILM

The 5.1 L7 FILM mode is a proprietary Lexicon listening mode designed for playback of 5.1-channel Dolby Digital-encoded film sources, and provides remarkable improvement compared to other decoders.

It derives seven channels from 5.1-channel input sources with enhanced front steering. When both side and rear speakers are present, the 5.1 L7 FILM listening mode also increases the perceived length and sense of envelopment of the listening space.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
VOCAL ENHANCE	+0.0dB	+6.0dB, +3.0dB, +0.0dB
FRONT STEERING	FILM	OFF, MSURR, MUSIC, FILM
RE-EQUALIZER	ON	ON, OFF
SOUND STAGE	REAR	REAR, NEUTRAL, FRONT
5 SPKR ENHANCE	ON	ON, OFF
BASS ENHANCE	OFF	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	7kHz	500HZ to 20kHz, OFF
REAR DLY OFFSET	15ms	OFF, 1ms to 30ms
COMPRESSION	OFF	AUTO, ON, OFF
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0dB to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1 TV

MODE ADJUST ▶ 5.1 TV

This proprietary Lexicon listening mode is designed for playback of 5.1-channel Dolby Digital-encoded broadcast sources. Based on the 5.1 L7 FILM listening mode, 5.1 L7 TV derives seven channels from 5.1-channel input sources with enhanced front steering.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
VOCAL ENHANCE	+0.0dB	+6.0dB, +3.0dB, +0.0dB
FRONT STEERING	FILM	OFF, MSURR, MUSIC, FILM
RE-EQUALIZER	OFF	OFF, ON
SOUND STAGE	REAR	REAR, NEUTRAL, FRONT
5 SPKR ENHANCE	ON	ON, OFF
BASS ENHANCE	OFF	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	7kHz	500HZ to 20kHz, OFF
REAR DLY OFFSET	15ms	OFF, 1ms to 30ms
COMPRESSION	OFF	AUTO, ON, OFF
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0dB to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1 MUSIC

MODE ADJUST ▶ 5.1 MUSIC

This proprietary Lexicon listening mode is designed for playback of 5.1-channel Dolby Digital-encoded music sources. Based on the 5.1 L7 FILM listening mode, 5.1 L7 MUSIC derives seven channels from 5.1-channel input sources with enhanced front steering.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
VOCAL ENHANCE	+0.0dB	+6.0dB, +3.0dB, +0.0dB
FRONT STEERING	MUSIC	OFF, MSURR, MUSIC, FILM
RE-EQUALIZER	OFF	OFF, ON
SOUND STAGE	NEUTRAL	REAR, NEUTRAL, FRONT
5 SPKR ENHANCE	ON	ON, OFF
BASS ENHANCE	OFF	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	7kHz	500HZ to 20kHz, OFF
REAR DLY OFFSET	15ms	OFF, 1ms to 30ms
COMPRESSION	OFF	AUTO, ON, OFF
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0dB to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

THX, THX UL2Cin & THX SurEX

MODE ADJUST ▶ THX OR THX UL2Cin OR THX SurEX

These modes are designed for 7-channel playback of 5.1-channel Dolby Digital film sources that do not have THX Surround EX encoding. They apply THX re-equalization to simulate high-frequency rolloffs that occur in movie theaters. Most films are mixed for movie theaters, and might sound too bright when played back in home theaters without re-equalization. THX timbre matching is applied to minimize timbre differences between the front and surround channels, which results in smoother sound movements between them. These modes are recommended for home theaters with THX-certified speakers.

The listening mode name differs depending on the encoding present in the input source, the SURROUND EX parameter setting, and the speaker setup.

The table at the bottom of the page shows the conditions for the behavior of the THX Ultra2 and THX Surround EX modes when activated:

- The THX ULTRA2 listening mode is available when both the side and rear speakers are present and THX Ultra2 decoding is engaged. THX Ultra2 decoding is engaged when the SURROUND EX parameter is set to OFF or AUTO and a non-flagged 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source with or without THX Surround EX encoding is detected.
- The THX SurEX listening mode is available when both the side and rear speakers are present and THX Surround EX decoding is engaged. THX Surround EX decoding is engaged when the SURROUND EX parameter is set to ON or AUTO and a *flagged* 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source with THX Surround EX encoding is detected.
- The THX listening mode is available when both Ultra2 and THX Surround EX decoding are deactivated.

Note:

Some EX encoded sources are not flagged, and require manually setting the SURROUND EX parameter to ON for EX decoding.

When THX Ultra2 decoding is active:

- Adaptive de-correlation is applied to increase the perceived width of the listening space. De-correlation of the mono surround channel increases the perceived width of the surround field in home theaters.

	Input Source		
Parameter Setting	**5.1-Channel Dolby Digital**	**5.1-Channel THX Surround EX Dolby Digital (Flagged)**	**5.1-Channel THX Surround EX Dolby Digital (Non-Flagged)**
SURROUND EX: AUTO	THX ULTRA2	THX SurEX	THX ULTRA2
SURROUND EX: ON	THX SurEX	THX SurEX	THX SurEX
SURROUND EX: OFF	THX ULTRA2	THX ULTRA2	THX ULTRA2

- ASA processing is applied to signals sent to the rear speakers. Refer to the ASA parameter description on page 3-32 for more information.

When THX Surround EX decoding is active:

Matrix decoding is applied to derive three surround channels from 5.1-channel Dolby Digital sources.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
RE-EQUALIZER	ON	ON, OFF
SURROUND EX	AUTO	AUTO, ON, OFF
COMPRESSION	OFF	AUTO, ON, OFF
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

THX MUSIC

MODE ADJUST ▶ THX MUSIC

This listening mode is designed for playback of 5.1-channel Dolby Digital music sources, and cannot be activated unless side and rear speakers are present. ASA processing is applied to signals sent to the rear speakers. Refer to the ASA parameter description on page 3-32 for more information. For best results, place the rear speakers close together in your home theater.

Note:

The THX MUSIC listening mode can only be activated with the front panel or remote control Mode buttons.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
COMPRESSION	OFF	AUTO, ON, OFF
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1 PLIIx MOV

MODE ADJUST ▶ **5.1 PLIIx MOV**

The 5.1 PLIIx MOV (MOVIE) listening mode is designed to playback 7.1 discrete channels decoded from 5.1-channel Dolby Digital film sources. (The 5.1 PLIIx MOVIE listening mode can also be used with other types of Dolby Digital sources with mixed results.) The seven main channels are full frequency. The .1 channel, often referred to as LFE information, has a limited frequency range of up to 120Hz. The 5.1 PLIIx MOVIE listening mode is only available when the front, side and rear speakers are present.

Note the following:

- The 5.1 PLIIx MOV listening mode cannot be assigned as the preferred listening mode for 2-channel sources. However, when the 2-CH parameter is set to USE LAST, the MC-12 automatically activates the 5.1 PLIIx MOV listening mode if the 5.1 PLIIx MOV listening mode was activated the last time a 2-channel source was present.
- The 5.1 PLIIx MOV mode does not appear in the list of available listening modes if either the side or rear speakers are missing from the configuration.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
EX DECODING	AUTO	AUTO, ON, OFF
COMPRESSION	OFF	AUTO, ON, OFF
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37.

5.1 PLIIx MUS

MODE ADJUST ▶ **5.1 PLIIx MUS**

The 5.1 PLIIx MUS (MUSIC) listening mode is designed to playback 7.1 discrete channels decoded from 5.1-channel Dolby Digital music sources. (The 5.1 PLIIx MUSIC listening mode can also be used with other types of Dolby Digital sources with mixed results.) The seven main channels are full frequency. The .1 channel, often referred to as LFE information, has a limited frequency range of up to 120Hz. The 5.1 PLIIx MUSIC listening mode is only available when the front, side and rear speakers are present.

Note the following:

- The 5.1 PLIIx MUS listening mode cannot be assigned as the preferred listening mode for 2-channel sources. However, when the 2-CH parameter is set to USE LAST, the MC-12 automatically activates the 5.1 PLIIx MUS listening mode if the 5.1 PLIIx MUS listening mode was activated the last time a 2-channel source was present.
- The 5.1 PLIIx MUS mode does not appear in the list of available listening modes if either the side or rear speakers are missing from the configuration.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
EX DECODING	AUTO	AUTO, ON, OFF
COMPRESSION	OFF	AUTO, ON, OFF
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37.

DIGITAL & DIGITAL EX

MODE ADJUST → DIGITAL OR DIGITAL EX

These listening modes are designed to decode and playback 5.1 discrete channels from 5.1-channel Dolby Digital sources. The five main channels are full frequency. The .1 channel, often referred to as LFE information, has a limited frequency range of 120Hz.

The mode name differs depending on the encoding present in the input source, the EX DECODING parameter setting, and the speaker setup.

The Dolby DIGITAL EX listening mode is recommended for Dolby Digital sources recorded with Dolby Digital Surround EX encoding. This listening mode can also be used with other types of 5.1-channel Dolby Digital sources with mixed results. The table at the bottom of the page shows the conditions for the behavior of the Dolby Digital EX mode when activated.

The Dolby DIGITAL EX listening mode is available when both the side and rear speakers are present and Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding is activated. Matrix decoding is then applied to derive a surround back channel from the other surround channels.

- Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding is activated when the EX DECODING parameter is set to ON or AUTO and a flagged 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source recorded with Dolby Digital Surround EX encoding is detected.
- Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding is not activated when the EX DECODING parameter is set to OFF or AUTO and a non-flagged 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source recorded with or without Dolby Digital Surround EX encoding is detected.

Note:

The MC-12 cannot detect Dolby Digital Surround EX encoding in non-flagged 5.1-channel Dolby Digital input sources because they do not include information in the input signal that identifies Dolby Digital Surround EX encoding.

The Dolby DIGITAL listening mode is available when both the side and rear speakers are present and Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding is not activated.

	Input Source		
Parameter Setting	**5.1-Channel Dolby Digital**	**5.1-Channel Surround EX (Flagged)**	**5.1-Channel Surround EX (Non-Flagged)**
EX DECODING: AUTO	DOLBY DIGITAL	DOLBY DIGITAL EX	DOLBY DIGITAL
EX DECODING: ON	DOLBY DIGITAL EX	DOLBY DIGITAL EX	DOLBY DIGITAL EX
EX DECODING: OFF	DOLBY DIGITAL	DOLBY DIGITAL	DOLBY DIGITAL

DIGITAL & DIGITAL EX *(continued)*

MODE ADJUST ▶ DIGITAL OR DIGITAL EX

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
EX DECODING	AUTO	AUTO, ON, OFF
COMPRESSION	OFF	AUTO, ON, OFF
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1 2-CHANNEL

MODE ADJUST ▶ 5.1 2-CHANNEL

This mode, recommended for recording purposes, is designed for converting 5.1-channel Dolby Digital-encoded input sources into 2-channel Logic 7-encoded output signals.

The downmixed 5.1-channel Dolby Digital input signals are sent to the front speakers and subwoofer.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
CENTER MIX	+0dB	-25 to +5dB
SURROUND MIX	+0dB	-5 to +5dB
CNTR DLY SAMPLES	+0	-127 to +127
MASTER LEVEL	+0dB	-5 to +5dB
COMPRESSION	OFF	AUTO, ON, OFF
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-20.0 to +0.0dB
SUB LEVEL	+0dB	OFF, -30 to +12dB
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1 MONO LOGIC

MODE ADJUST ▶ 5.1 MONO LOGIC

This listening mode, designed for playback of Dolby Digital-encoded mono sources, uses proprietary Lexicon reverb algorithms to realistically expand mono sources to use all channels. This dramatically increases the perceived width and sense of envelopment of the listening space.

Note that:

- When a 1.0 Dolby Digital source is present, the MC-12 automatically activates the 5.1 MONO LOGIC listening mode.
- When the Shift command bank is activated, pressing the TVL button activates the 5.1 MONO LOGIC listening mode for 5.1-channel sources.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
EFFECT LVL	-9dB	-12 to +6dB
ACADEMY FILTER	ON	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	3.1kHz	500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1 MONO SURR

MODE ADJUST ▶ 5.1 MONO SURR

This listening mode, designed for playback of Dolby Digital-encoded mono sources, sends mono signals to all channels.

Parameter	
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1 MONO

MODE ADJUST ▶ 5.1 MONO

This listening mode, designed for playback of Dolby Digital-encoded mono sources, sends mono signals to the center channel.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
SUB LEVEL	+0dB	OFF, -30 to +12dB
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

DTS ES DECODING

The DTS and DTS-ES listening modes are designed for, at a minimum, playback of 5.1-channel DTS, 5.1-channel matrix encoded DTS-ES, and 6.1-channel discrete-encoded DTS-ES sources.

DTS and DTS-ES listening mode names differ depending on the encoding present in the input source, the DECODING parameter setting, and the speaker setup.

DTS-ES listening modes are available when DTS-ES decoding is activated. The table at the bottom of the page shows the conditions for the behavior of DTS-ES decoding when it is activated.

- DTS-ES decoding is activated when both the side and rear speakers are present and the ES DECODING parameter is set to ON or AUTO and a 5.1-channel matrix-encoded or a 6.1-channel discrete-encoded DTS-ES source is detected.
- DTS-ES decoding is deactivated when the ES DECODING parameter is set to OFF or when the ES DECODING parameter is set to AUTO and a 5.1-channel DTS source is detected.

Note:

The table below is not applicable to the DTS-ES THX, DTS THX ULTRA2, and DTS THX MUSIC listening modes.

	Input Source		
Parameter Setting	**5.1-Channel DTS**	**5.1-Channel Matrix-Encoded DTS-ES**	**6.1-Channel Discrete-Encoded DTS-ES**
ES DECODING: AUTO	DTS	DTS-ES	DTS-ES
ES DECODING: ON	DTS-ES	DTS-ES	DTS-ES
ES DECODING: OFF	DTS	DTS	DTS

dts ES L7 FILM & dts L7 FILM

MODE ADJUST ▶ dts ES L7 FILM OR dts L7 FILM

These proprietary Lexicon listening modes use an advanced matrix to decode seven channels from 5.1 and 6.1-channel film sources with enhanced front steering. When both side and rear speakers are present, the DTS-ES L7 FILM listening mode also increases the perceived length and sense of envelopment of the listening space.

The listening modes are designed for enhanced playback of 5.1-channel DTS, 5.1-channel matrix-encoded DTS-ES, or 6.1-channel discrete encoded DTS-ES film sources. The listening mode name differs depending on the encoding present in the input source, the ES DECODING parameter setting, and the speaker setup.

Option/Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
VOCAL ENHANCE	+0.0dB	+6.0dB, +3.0dB, +0.0dB
FRONT STEERING	FILM	OFF, MSURR, MUSIC, FILM
RE-EQUALIZER	ON	ON, OFF
SOUND STAGE	REAR	REAR, NEUTRAL, FRONT
5 SPKR ENHANCE	ON	ON, OFF
BASS ENHANCE	OFF	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	7kHz	500Hz to 20kHz, OFF
REAR DLY OFFSET	15ms	OFF, 1 to 30ms
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
ES DECODING	AUTO	AUTO, ON, OFF
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

dts ES L7 MUSIC & dts L7 MUSIC

MODE ADJUST ▶ dts ES L7 MUSIC OR dts L7 MUSIC

These proprietary Lexicon listening modes, similar to the DTS-ES L7 FILM listening mode, use an advanced matrix to decode seven channels from 5.1- and 6.1-channel music sources with enhanced front steering to provide remarkable sound improvement compared to other decoders. They are designed for enhanced playback of 5.1-channel DTS, 5.1-channel matrix-encoded DTS-ES, or 6.1-channel discrete encoded DTS-ES music sources.

The listening mode name differs depending on the encoding present in the input source, the ES DECODING parameter setting, and the speaker setup.

Option/Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
VOCAL ENHANCE	+0.0dB	+6.0dB, +3.0dB, +0.0dB
FRONT STEERING	MUSIC	OFF, MSURR, MUSIC, FILM
RE-EQUALIZER	OFF	ON, OFF
SOUND STAGE	NEUTRAL	REAR, NEUTRAL, FRONT
5 SPKR ENHANCE	ON	ON, OFF
BASS ENHANCE	OFF	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	7kHz	500Hz to 20kHz, OFF
REAR DLY OFFSET	15ms	OFF, 1 to 30ms
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
ES DECODING	AUTO	AUTO, ON, OFF
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

dts ES THX & dts THX UL2Cin

MODE ADJUST ▸ dts ES THX OR dts THX UL2Cin

The DTS THX UL2Cin (ULTRA2 CINEMA) and DTS-ES THX listening modes allow 7-channel playback of 5.1-channel DTS sources that lack DTS-ES encoding. They are designed for playback of 5.1-channel DTS, 5.1-channel matrix encoded DTS-ES, or 6.1-channel DTS-ES discrete-encoded film sources. DTS THX UL2Cin and DTS-ES THX are recommended for home theaters with THX-certified speakers. These modes apply:

- THX re-equalization to simulate high-frequency rolloffs that occur in movie theaters. Most films are mixed for movie theaters, and might sound too bright when played back in home theaters without re-equalization.
- THX timbre matching to minimize timbre differences between the front and surround channels, which results in smoother sound movements between them.

The listening mode name differs depending on the encoding present in the input source, the ES DECODING parameter setting, and the speaker setup.

The DTS THX UL2Cin listening mode

The DTS THX UL2Cin listening mode is available when when both side and rear speakers are present and THX Ultra2 decoding is activated.

To activate DTS THX UL2Cin decoding:

1. Press MODE ADJUST ▸ dts ES THX ▸ ES DECODING.
2. Use the ▲ or ▼ arrow to select either AUTO (the default) or OFF.

   When the the ES DECODING parameter is set to OFF the DTS-ES THX ULTRA2 listening mode is always active. When the parameter is set to AUTO the DTS-ES THX ULTRA2 listening mode activates when a 5.1-channel DTS source is detected.

When THX UL2Cin decoding is activated:

- Adaptive de-correlation is applied to increase the perceived width of the listening space. De-correlation of the mono surround channel increases the perceived width of the surround field in home theaters.
- ASA processing is applied to signals sent to the rear speakers. Refer to the ASA parameter description on page 3-32 for more information.

The DTS-ES THX listening mode

The DTS-ES THX listening mode is available when both the side and rear speakers are present and DTS-ES decoding is active.

DTS-ES decoding is activated when the ES DECODING parameter is set to AUTO (the default) or ON and a 5.1-channel matrix-encoded or 6.1-channel discrete-encoded DTS-ES source is detected.

The table at the bottom of the page shows the conditions for the behavior of the DTS THX UL2Cin and DTS-ES THX modes when activated:.

Option/Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
RE-EQUALIZER	ON	ON, OFF
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
ES DECODING	AUTO	AUTO, ON, OFF
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detaileddescriptions.

Parameter Setting	Input Source		
	5.1-Channel DTS	5.1-Channel Matrix-Encoded DTS-ES	6.1-Channel Discrete-Encoded DTS-ES
ES DECODING: AUTO	DTS THX UL2Cin	DTS-ES THX	DTS-ES THX
ES DECODING: ON	DTS-ES THX	DTS-ES THX	DTS-ES THX
ES DECODING: OFF	DTS THX UL2Cin	DTS THX UL2Cin	DTS THX UL2Cin

dts THX MUSIC

MODE ADJUST ▸ dts THX MUSIC

The DTS THX MUSIC listening mode is designed for playback of 5.1-channel DTS music sources when the side and rear speakers are present. ASA processing is applied to signals sent to the rear speakers. Refer to the ASA parameter description on page 3-32 for more information. This mode is recommended for home theaters with THX-certified speaker setups.

Option/Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

Note:

The DTS THX MUSIC listening mode can only be activated with the front panel or remote control Mode buttons.

dts ES & dts

MODE ADJUST ▸ dts ES OR dts

This mode decodes 5.1 matrix or 6.1 discrete channels from DTS-ES sources. It is designed for playback of 5.1-channel DTS, 5.1-channel matrix encoded DTS-ES, and 6.1-channel discrete-encoded DTS-ES sources.

The six decoded main channels are full frequency. The .1 channel, often referred to as LFE information, has a limited frequency range of 120Hz.

The listening mode name differs depending on the encoding present in the input source, the DECODING parameter setting, and the speaker setup. Refer to page 5-21 for more information.

Option/Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
ES DECODING	AUTO	AUTO, ON, OFF
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

dts ES 2-CHAN & dts 2-CHAN

MODE ADJUST ▶ dts ES 2-CHAN OR dts 2-CHAN

These modes, recommended for recording purposes, send downmixed 5.1-channel or 6.1-channel DTS-ES input signals to the front speakers and subwoofer as 2-channel Logic 7-encoded output signals.

Option/Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
CENTER MIX	+0dB	-25 to +5dB
SURROUND MIX	+0dB	-5 to +5dB
CNTR DLY SAMPLES	+0	-127 to +127
MASTER LEVEL	+0dB	-5 to +5dB
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-20.0 to +0.0dB
ES DECODING	AUTO	AUTO, ON, OFF
SUB LEVEL	+0dB	OFF, -30 to +12dB
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1a LOGIC 7 FILM

MODE ADJUST ▶ 5.1 LOGIC 7 FILM

The 5.1a LOGIC 7 FILM listening mode is a proprietary Lexicon listening mode that uses Logic 7 decoding to derive seven channels from of 5.1-channel analog film sources with enhanced front steering.

This listening mode allows 5.1-channel analog sources to use bass management, speaker crossovers, speaker distance calibration, and audio controls (tone controls).

Option/Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
VOCAL ENHANCE	+0.0dB	+6.0dB, +3.0dB, +0.0dB
FRONT STEERING	FILM	OFF, MSURR, MUSIC, FILM
RE-EQUALIZER	OFF	ON, OFF
SOUND STAGE	REAR	REAR, NEUTRAL, FRONT
5 SPKR ENHANCE	ON	ON, OFF
BASS ENHANCE	OFF	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	7kHz	500Hz to 20kHz, OFF
REAR DLY OFFSET	15ms	OFF, 1 to 30ms
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1a MUSIC

MODE ADJUST ▷ 5.1a MUSIC

The 5.1a LOGIC 7 MUSIC listening mode is similiar to the 5.1a LOGIC 7 FILM listening mode, but specifically tailored for music sources. This mode is designed and recommended for playback of 5.1-channel analog music sources.

Option/Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
VOCAL ENHANCE	+0.0dB	+6.0dB, +3.0dB, +0.0dB
FRONT STEERING	MUSIC	OFF, MSURR, MUSIC, FILM
RE-EQUALIZER	OFF	ON, OFF
SOUND STAGE	NEUTRAL	REAR, NEUTRAL, FRONT
5 SPKR ENHANCE	ON	ON, OFF
BASS ENHANCE	OFF	ON, OFF
SURR ROLLOFF	7kHz	500Hz to 20kHz, OFF
REAR DLY OFFSET	15ms	OFF, 1 to 30ms
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1a THX UL2Cin, 5.1a THX SurEX, & 5.1a THX

MODE ADJUST ▷ 5.1a THX UL2Cin OR 5.1a THX SurEX OR 5.1a THX

The 5.1a THX UL2Cin, 5.1a THX SurEX, and 5.1a THX listening modes are designed to convert 5.1-channel analog film sources that lack THX Surround EX encoding into seven channel audio. The modes also allow 5.1-channel analog sources to use bass management, speaker crossovers, speaker distance calibration, and audio controls (tone controls). The 5.1a THX UL2Cin, 5.1a THX SurEX, and 5.1a THX listening modes are recommended for home theaters with THX-certified speakers. These modes apply:

- THX re-equalization to simulate high-frequency rolloffs that occur in movie theaters. Most films are mixed for movie theaters, and might sound too bright when played back in home theaters without re-equalization.
- THX timbre matching to minimize timbre differences between the front and surround channels, which results in smoother sound movements between them.

The listening mode name differs depending on the SURROUND EX parameter setting, and the speaker setup.

The table at the top of the next page indicates the conditions in which THX Ultra2 and THX Surround EX decoding are activated.

5.1a THX UL2Cin, 5.1a THX SurEX, & 5.1a THX *(continued)*

MODE ADJUST ▶ 5.1a THX UL2Cin OR 5.1a THX SurEX OR 5.1a THX

	Input Source		
Parameter Setting	**5.1-Channel Analog**	**5.1-Channel THX Surround EX Analog (Flagged)**	**5.1-Channel THX Surround EX Analog (Non-Flagged)**
SURROUND EX: ON	5.1a THX SurEX	5.1a THX SurEX	5.1a THX SurEX
SURROUND EX: OFF	5.1a THX ULTRA2	5.1a THX ULTRA2	5.1a THX ULTRA2

The 5.1a THX UL2Cin listening mode

The 5.1a THX UL2Cin listening mode is available when both side and rear speakers are present and THX Ultra2 decoding is active. THX Ultra2 decoding is activated when the SURROUND EX parameter is set to OFF. When THX Ultra2 decoding is activated:

- Adaptive de-correlation is applied to increase the perceived width of the listening space. De-correlation of the mono surround channel increases the perceived width of the surround field in home theaters.
- ASA processing is applied to signals sent to the rear speakers. Refer to the ASA parameter description on page 3-32 for more information.

The 5.1a THX SurEX listening mode

The 5.1a THX SurEX listening mode is available when both side and rear speakers are present and THX surround EX decoding is active. THX Surround EX decoding is activated when the SURROUND EX parameter is set to ON.

When THX Surround EX decoding is activated Matrix decoding is applied to derive three surround channels from 5.1-channel analog sources.

The 5.1a THX listening mode

The 5.1a THX listening mode is available when neither THX Ultra2 nor THX Surround EX decoding is active.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
RE-EQUALIZER	ON	ON, OFF
SURROUND EX	OFF	ON, OFF
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1a THX MUSIC

MODE ADJUST ▷ 5.1a THX MUSIC

The 5.1a THX MUSIC listening mode is designed for playback of 5.1-channel analog music sources. It cannot be activated unless side and rear speakers are present. This mode performs best in home theaters where the rear speakers are placed close together.

ASA processing is applied to signals sent to the rear speakers. Refer to the ASA parameter description on page 3-32 for more information.

Option/Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-10.0 to +0.0dB
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35	
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

Note:

The 5.1a THX MUSIC listening mode can only be activated with the front panel or remote control Mode buttons.

5.1a STANDARD

MODE ADJUST ▷ 5.1a STANDARD

This mode allows 5.1-channel analog sources to use bass management, speaker crossovers, speaker distance calibration, and audio controls (tone controls). When these features are not used, the 5.1a STANDARD listening mode is similar to the 5.1a BYPASS listening mode. The 5.1a STANDARD mode sends identical signals (with appropriate time delays) to the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Side L and Rear L, as well as Side R and Rear R.

Parameter	
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1a 2-CHANNEL

MODE ADJUST ▶ **5.1a 2-CHANNEL**

This mode downmixes 5.1-channel analog input signals into 2-channel Logic 7-encoded output signals. It sends these signals to the front speakers and the subwoofer. It is recommended for recording purposes, particularly for recording from a DVD-A or multi-channel SACD player to a CD-R or another 2-channel recording format.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
CENTER MIX	+0dB	-25 to +5dB
SURROUND MIX	+0dB	-5 to +5dB
CNTR DLY SAMPLES	+0	-127 to +127
MASTER LEVEL	+0dB	-5 to +5dB
LFE MIX	+0.0dB	-20.0 to +0.0dB
SUB L/R LVL	+0dB	OFF, -30 to +12dB
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

5.1a BYPASS

MODE ADJUST ▶ **5.1a BYPASS**

- Designed for playback of 5.1-channel analog sources, such as DVD-A or SACD players.
- Sends the 5.1-channel analog audio input connector directly to the Main Zone volume control and audio output connectors as shown on page 2-6 and page 3-59. These signals receive no internal processing.
- When both side and rear speakers are present, surround channel signals are sent in parallel to the side and rear speakers. To configure a 5-channel speaker setup, set the OUTPUT LEVELS menu SIDE L/R or REAR L/R parameter to OFF to deactivate the associated surround speakers.
- The 5.1a BYPASS listening mode is automatically activated whenever the 5.1-channel analog audio input connector is assigned to the selected input. The 5.1a BYPASS listening mode is only available for 5.1-channel analog sources.
- Pressing the remote control SHIFT then 2CH buttons toggles the MAIN ADV menu ANALOG BYPASS parameter between ON and OFF.

Option/Parameter	
OUTPUT LEVELS	Refer to page 5-35
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

Note:

Speaker crossover settings, speaker distances, and audio controls (tone) are not available when the 5.1a BYPASS listening mode is activated.

2CH BYPASS

MODE ADJUST ▶ 2CH BYPASS

This listening mode sends 2-channel analog audio input signals to the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Front L/R with no internal processing.

The 2CH BYPASS listening mode is automatically activated whenever a 2-channel analog source is present and the MAIN ADV menu ANALOG BYPASS parameter is set to ON. The 2CH BYPASS listening mode is not available when a digital source is present and the MAIN ADV menu INPUT SELECT parameter is set to AUTO.

Pressing the remote control SHIFT then 2CH buttons toggles the MAIN ADV menu ANALOG BYPASS parameter between ON and OFF.

Note:

Speaker crossover settings, speaker distances, and audio controls (tone) are not available when the 2CH BYPASS listening mode is activated.

LIVE! SMALL, LIVE! MED & LIVE! LARGE

MODE ADJUST ▶ LIVE! SMALL OR LIVE! MED OR LIVE! LARGE

LIVE! (Lexicon Intelligent Variable Environment) is a proprietary mode designed to transform the way your listening room sounds. It provides a realistic illusion of a larger, more reverberant listening space. LIVE! SMALL simulates the reverberations of a room that is small, but larger than an average living room. LIVE! LARGE simulates the reverberations of a large hall. LIVE! requires two permanently mounted microphones. (See “LIVE! Calibration” on page 3-71 for placement and calibration instructions.) LIVE! cannot be used with prerecorded sources such as CD or DVD.

When LIVE! is activated, the BASS, TREBLE, and TILT EQ audio controls are set to +0.0dB and LOUDNESS is set to OFF, until LIVE! is deactivated.

LIVE! SMALL parameter settings:

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
MID RT	597ms	115ms to 15.4s
BASS RT	597ms	23ms to 30.8ms
ROLLOFF	3.1kHz	500Hz to 20kHz
TREB CUT RT	3.1kHz	500Hz to 20kHz
PRE-DELAY	10ms	10ms to 100ms
ADVANCED		
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

LIVE! SMALL, LIVE! MED & LIVE! LARGE *(continued)*

MODE ADJUST ▶ LIVE! SMALL OR LIVE! MED OR LIVE! LARGE

LIVE! SMALL ADVANCED parameter settings:

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
REVERB LVL	+0dB	-80dB to +0dB
EARLY RFLX LVL	-13dB	-80dB to +12dB
BASS XOVER	156Hz	30Hz to 19.9kHz, OFF
SHAPE	0	0 to 4
SPREAD	0%	0% to 100%
SIZE	19m	4m to 60m

LIVE! MED parameter settings:

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
MID RT	1.84s	115ms to 15.4s
BASS RT	2.76s	23ms to 30.8ms
ROLLOFF	2.4kHz	500Hz to 20kHz
TREB CUT RT	3.1kHz	500Hz to 20kHz
PRE-DELAY	18ms	10ms to 100ms
ADVANCED		
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

LIVE! MED ADVANCED parameter settings:

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
REVERB LVL	-4dB	-80dB to +0dB
EARLY RFLX LVL	-14dB	-80dB to +12dB
BASS XOVER	156Hz	30Hz to 19.9kHz, OFF
SHAPE	2	0 to 4
SPREAD	25%	0% to 100%
SIZE	30m	4m to 60m

LIVE! LARGE parameter settings:

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
MID RT	4.71s	115ms to 30.8s
BASS RT	4.71s	23ms to 30.8ms
ROLLOFF	3.1kHz	500Hz to 20kHz
TREB CUT RT	2.4kHz	500Hz to 20kHz
PRE-DELAY	20ms	10ms to 100ms
ADVANCED		
CUSTOM	Refer to page 5-35	

LIVE! LARGE ADVANCED parameter settings:

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
REVERB LVL	-6dB	-80dB to +0dB
EARLY RFLX LVL	-17dB	-80dB to +12dB
BASS XOVER	156Hz	30Hz to 19.9kHz, OFF
SHAPE	2	0 to 4
SPREAD	28%	0% to 100%
SIZE	38m	4m to 60m

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

OUTPUT LEVELS

MODE ADJUST ▶ Listening Mode ▶ OUTPUT LEVELS

OUTPUT LEVELS	
CENTER	+0dB
SIDE L/R	+0dB
REAR L/R	+0dB
SUB L/R	+0dB
LFE	+0dB

Opens the OUTPUT LEVELS menu, which is used to adjust output levels for the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Center, Subwoofer L/R, LFE, Side L/R, and Rear L/R.

The OUTPUT LEVELS option does not appear on listening mode menus when the selected listening mode does not accommodate multi-channel output signals. Instead, an output-specific parameter appears. For example, the MONO listening mode menu includes a SUB L/R LVL parameter.

Parameter	Default Setting	Possible Settings
CENTER	+0dB	OFF, -30 to +12dB
SIDE L/R	+0dB	OFF, -30 to +12dB
REAR L/R	+0dB	OFF, -30 to +12dB
SUB	+0dB	OFF, -30 to +12dB
LFE	+0dB	OFF, -30 to +12dB

See "Listening Mode Menu Option & Parameter Descriptions" on page 5-37 for detailed descriptions.

CUSTOM

MODE ADJUST ▶ Listening Mode ▶ CUSTOM

Opens the CUSTOM menu shown below, which can be used to compare custom and factory-default versions of the selected listening mode and to restore the factory-default version of the selected listening mode.

CUSTOM VS PRESET

MODE ADJUST ▶ Listening Mode ▶ CUSTOM ▶ CUSTOM VS PRESET

Allows comparison listening between the custom and factory-default versions of the selected listening mode. When PRESET is selected, the listening mode is heard in its factory-default condition, as if all listening mode menu parameters were set to their factory-default settings.

When CUSTOM is selected, the listening mode is heard it its custom condition, including all current listening mode menu parameter settings. The PRESET and CUSTOM versions of the selected listening mode will sound identical when all listening mode menu parameters are set to their factory-default settings.

Note:

The CUSTOM VS PRESET option does not affect current listening mode menu parameter settings.

To toggle between the custom and factory-default versions of the selected listening mode:

1. Follow the CUSTOM VS PRESET menu path to open the CUSTOM VS PRESET drop-down menu.

2. When the CUSTOM VS PRESET option drop-down menu is open, press the remote control ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons to toggle between the PRESET (factory-default) and CUSTOM versions of the selected listening mode.
3. When finished, press the ◀ arrow button to close the CUSTOM VS PRESET drop down menu.

RESET MODE

MODE ADJUST ▶ Listening Mode ▶ CUSTOM ▶ RESET MODE

Restores the factory-default version of the selected listening mode, restoring all listening mode menu parameters to their factory default settings.

To restore the factory-default version of the selected listening mode:

1. Follow the RESET MODE menu path to select the RESET MODE option. The PRESS RIGHT → TO RESTORE MODE message appears on the on-screen display.

2. Press the ▶ arrow button to restore the factory-default version of the selected listening mode. Press the ◀ arrow button to close the message without restoring the factory-default.

Note:

When the CUSTOM menu RESET MODE option is selected to restore the factory-default version of the selected listening mode, the corresponding TRIGGER SETUP menu listening mode parameter is automatically set to OFF.

LISTENING MODE MENU OPTION & PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS

5 SPKR ENHANCE ON, OFF

Simulates 7-channel playback in 5-channel speaker configurations. When set to ON, the MC-12 provides an increased sense of spaciousness and envelopment through the surround speakers. This enhancement is most noticeable when the surround speakers are positioned to the side of the primary listening position, or when the primary listening position is located against the rear wall. The effectiveness of this parameter varies within the listening space. For best results, it is recommended that you position the surround speakers to the left and right sides of the primary listening position. Available in all Logic 7 modes.

ACADEMY FILTER ON, OFF

When set to ON, restores the proper tonal balance of older mono film sources that have much narrower frequency responses than more recent mono film sources. Available in MONO LOGIC and 5.1 MONO LOGIC modes.

AUTO AZIMUTH ON, OFF

Maximizes matrix steering accuracy. When set to ON, the MC-12 continually monitors the 2-channel input signal and automatically adjusts the relative level and time offset of the input channels to ensure that signals are sent to the appropriate channels with maximum separation. When set to OFF, the accuracy of the selected listening mode varies among sources. It is recommended that you set this parameter to ON for film and broadcast sources and to OFF for music sources. Available in L7 FILM and L7 TV modes.

BASS CONTENT BINAURAL, MONO, STEREO

Adjusts the bass content of binaural, mono and stereo recordings. When set to BINAURL, the MC-12 activates low-frequency compensation. Select this setting for true binaural sources recorded with dummy head microphones. Select the MONO setting for sources recorded with mono bass. Select the STEREO setting for sources recorded with stereo bass. Available in PANORAMA mode.

BASS ENHANCE ON, OFF

Enhances stereo bass, which results in low-frequency reproduction that is less localizable and more realistic in the listening space. The effectiveness of the BASS ENHANCE parameter varies depending on room acoustics and the ability of the surround speakers to reproduce low frequencies. It is recommended that you use front, side or rear speakers that are capable of reproducing frequencies of 40Hz or lower. Available in all Logic 7 modes.

BASS RT 5ms to 48.6s

Works with the MID RT and SIZE parameters to adjust the amount of time required for low-frequency information to decay below 60dB in level. In smaller listening spaces, the BASS RT parameter setting should match the MID RT parameter setting for more natural effects. Available in CHURCH, CATHEDRAL, and all LIVE! modes

CAUTION!

Setting the BASS RT, MID RT and SIZE parameters to a high value may produce undesirable or damaging audio.

BASS XOVER 30Hz to 19.9kHz, OFF

Sets the frequency at which BASS RT applies. Available in all LIVE! modes.

CALIBRATION

Opens the PANORAMA listening mode CALIBRATION menu, which is used to calibrate the PANORAMA listening mode. Refer to “PANORAMA” on page 5-12 for more information. Available in PANORAMA mode.

LISTENING MODE MENU OPTION & PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS *(continued)*

CENTER OFF, -30 to +12dB

Controls the output level of the audio output connector labeled Center. Available in all except 2 CH modes (2-CHANNEL, 2 CH BYPASS, DTS(-ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1 2-CHANNEL, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL), MONO, 5.1 MONO, and LIVE! modes.

CENTER DEPTH 0 to 18

Adjusts the amount of processing applied to the center channel, changing the perceived distance of the center speaker. Higher settings increase and lower settings decrease the perceived distance of the center speaker from the listening position. Available in NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL, CHURCH, and CATHEDRAL modes.

CENTER MIX -25 to +5dB

Indicates the relative center channel level for downmixing. Set this parameter to +0dB for film sources and -5dB for music sources. Available in 5.1 2-CHANNEL, DTS(-ES) 2-CHAN, and 5.1a 2-CHANNEL modes.

CNTR DLY SAMPLES -127 to +127

Controls the relative time offset of the center channel. Set this parameter to +0 unless the center channel is not properly timed and the value of the error is known. Available in 5.1 2-CHANNEL, DTS(-ES) 2-CHAN, and 5.1a 2-CHANNEL modes.

COMPRESSION AUTO, ON, OFF

Reduces wide volume level changes and increases dialog intelligibility at lower listening levels for Dolby Digital input sources. When ON, full compression is applied regardless of volume level. When OFF, compression is not applied. Set this parameter to AUTO or ON for Dolby Digital input sources that are listened to at lower volume levels, especially for nighttime viewing to avoid disturbing others. Available in all Dolby Digital modes.

CTR WIDTH MIN, 1 to 6, MAX

Adjusts the center image. When set to MIN, the center image is heard from just the center speaker. When set to MAX, the center image is heard as a "phantom" center image from the front left and right speakers. When set on the 1 to 6 scale, the center image is heard in various combinations of the front and center speakers. Available in Dolby PLII MUSIC and Dolby PLIIx MUSIC modes.

CUSTOM

Opens the CUSTOM menu, which is used to compare custom and factory-default versions of the selected listening mode and to restore the factory default version of the selected listening mode. Available in all modes.

CUSTOM VS PRESET

Allows comparison listening to the custom and factory-default versions of the selected listening mode. Refer to page 5-33 for information. Available in all modes.

DIMENSION FRONT, NEUTRAL, REAR

Controls the relative balance of the sound field, which can be useful with certain recordings to achieve a more suitable balance among all speakers. When set to FRONT, the sound field is balanced toward the front of the listening space. When set to NEUTRAL, the sound field is balanced at the center of the listening space. When set to REAR, the sound field is balanced toward the rear of the listening space. Available in Dolby PLII MUSIC and Dolby PLIIx MUSIC modes.

EARLY RFLX LVL -80dB to +12dB, OFF

Controls the amount of additional early reflections. Available in all LIVE! modes.

EFFECT LVL -12 to +6dB

Adjusts the amount of effect applied to the listening mode. Available in NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL, CHURCH, CATHEDRAL, PANORAMA, MONO LOGIC, and 5.1 MONO LOGIC modes.

ES DECODING AUTO, ON, OFF

Controls DTS-ES decoding, which extracts a rear channel from 5.1-channel DTS, 5.1-channel matrix-encoded DTS-ES, and 6.1-channel discrete-encoded DTS-ES sources. When ON is selected, DTS-ES decoding is activated for all DTS-ES sources. When OFF is selected, DTS-ES decoding is deactivated for all DTS-ES sources.

When AUTO is selected, DTS-ES decoding is activated when a 5.1-channel matrix-encoded or a 6.1-channel discrete-encoded DTS-ES source is detected. DTS-ES decoding is deactivated when a 5.1-channel DTS source is detected.

DTS-ES listening modes are available when DTS-ES decoding is engaged. DTS listening modes are available when DTS-ES decoding is not engaged. Refer to the DTS-ES Decoding section that begins on page 5-22 for more information.

Note the following:

- DTS-ES decoding cannot be engaged unless both side and rear speakers are present.
- When the Shift command bank is activated, pressing the remote control DTS button while a DTS-ES source is present adjusts the ES DECODING parameter, cycling through the AUTO, ON, and OFF settings.
- The DTS-ES STATUS menu includes an SB level meter when the ES DECODING parameter is set to ON and a 5.1-channel DTS source is present or when the ES DECODING parameter is set to AUTO and a 5.1-channel matrix-encoded or 6.1-channel discrete-encoded DTS-ES source is present.

This parameter is available in all DTS modes.

EX DECODING AUTO, ON, OFF

Controls Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding, which extracts a rear channel from 5.1-channel Dolby Digital sources recorded with or without Dolby Digital Surround EX. When ON, Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding is engaged for all 5.1-channel Dolby Digital sources. When OFF, Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding is disengaged for all 5.1-channel Dolby Digital sources.

When AUTO is selected, Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding is engaged when a flagged 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source recorded with Dolby Digital Surround EX encoding is detected. Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding is not engaged when a non- flagged 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source recorded with or without Dolby Digital Surround EX encoding is detected.

Note:

The MC-12 cannot automatically detect Dolby Digital Surround EX encoding in non-flagged 5.1-channel Dolby Digital sources. A non-flagged input source does not identify Dolby Digital Surround EX encoding in the input signal.

The Dolby DIGITAL EX listening mode is available when Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding is engaged. The Dolby DIGITAL listening mode is available when Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding is not engaged. Refer to the Dolby DIGITAL EX & Dolby DIGITAL listening mode descriptions that begin on page 5-19 for more information.

LISTENING MODE MENU OPTION & PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS *(continued)*

Note the following:

- Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding cannot be engaged unless both side and rear speakers are present.

This parameter is available in 5.1 PLIIx MOV, 5.1 PLIIx MUS, DOLBY DIGITAL EX, and DOLBY DIGITAL modes.

- When the Shift command bank is activated, pressing the remote control DOLBY button while a 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source is present activates the Dolby DIGITAL EX or Dolby DIGITAL listening mode. Subsequent presses adjust the EX DECODING parameter, cycling through the AUTO, ON, and OFF settings.

FRONT STEERING

OFF, MSURR, MUSIC, FILM

Adjusts front steering between the front left, front right, and center speakers. When set to FILM, maximum front steering is applied to the center channel. When set to MUSIC, moderate front steering is applied. When set to MSURR, minimum front steering is applied. When set to OFF, no front steering is applied. It is recommended that you set this parameter to FILM for film and broadcast sources and to MUSIC, MSURR or OFF for music sources. Available in L7 TV, L7 MUSIC, L7 MUSIC SURR, all 5.1 L7 modes, all DTS L7 modes, and all 5.1a L7 modes.

INPUT BALANCE

L< to <I> to >R

Controls the balance of the selected stereo analog audio input connectors, compensating for audio input sources with audible channel imbalance. Available in PANORAMA mode.

LFE

OFF, -30.0 to +012dB

Controls the output level of the Main Zone audio output connector labeled LFE. The OUTPUT LEVELS menu does not include the LFE parameter unless an LFE subwoofer is present. Available in All Dolby Digital, DTS, and 5.1a modes.

LFE MIX

-20.0 or -10.0 to +0.0dB

Controls the output level of LFE information – the 5.1 channel in a 5.1-channel or 6.1-channel input source – that is sent to the audio output labeled Subwoofer. Low frequencies from up to seven other channels might be combined with the LFE information to create the subwoofer output signal, which significantly increases subwoofer output levels.

Careful adjustment of this parameter allows achievement of proper tonal balance and reduces the risk of subwoofer overload. When the speaker setup does not include a subwoofer, LFE information is mixed into speakers for which the corresponding CUSTOM SETUP menu parameter is set to FULL or to the lowest crossover points. Available in all Dolby Digital modes except MONO modes (5.1 MONO LOGIC, 5.1 MONO SURR, 5.1 MONO), all DTS modes, and all 5.1a modes except 5.1a STANDARD and 5.1a BYPASS modes.

LISTENER POS

-127 to +127

Compensates for primary listening positions that are not centered between the front left and right speakers. Each increment within the -127 to +127 parameter range represents about one-third of an inch. Refer to the Calibration section that begins on page 5-12 for more information. Available in PANORAMA CALIBRATION mode.

Note:

The LISTENER POS parameter range might extend past the location of the front left and right speakers.

LIVENESS 30ms to 20.2s

Depends on the SIZE parameter setting. The LIVENESS parameter adjusts the amount of effect recirculation. Higher settings mimic more reflective surfaces and increase decay time. Available in NIGHTCLUB and CONCERT HALL modes.

LOW FREQ WIDTH -25 to +25dB

Applies low-frequency spatial correction to the input signal. This correction is applied to uncorrelated input signals below 60Hz. Available in PANORAMA mode.

MASTER LEVEL -5 to +5dB

Adjusts the output level of 2-channel Logic 7-encoded sources. Available in 5.1 2-CHANNEL, DTS(-ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL modes.

MID RT 24ms to 24.3s

Works with the SIZE parameters to adjust the amount of time required for mid-frequency information to decay below 60dB in level. The full parameter range might not be available depending on the SIZE parameter setting. Available in CHURCH, CATHEDRAL, and all LIVE! modes.

CAUTION!

Setting the BASS RT, MID RT or SIZE parameters to a high value may produce undesirable or damaging audio.

OUTPUT LEVELS

Opens the OUTPUT LEVELS menu, which is used to adjust output levels for the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Center, Subwoofer L/R, LFE, Side L/R, and Rear L/R. Refer to page 5-32 for more information. Available in all except 2-CHANNEL, MONO, 5.1 2-CHANNEL, 5.1 MONO, DTS (ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL, 2CH BYPASS, and LIVE! modes.

PANORAMA ON, OFF

When set to ON, Dolby PLII MUSIC and Dolby PLIIx MUSIC listening modes extend the front stereo image to include surround channel signals, which creates a “wraparound” effect with side wall imaging. Available in DPLII MUSIC and DPLIIx MUSIC modes.

Note:

The PANORAMA parameter within the Dolby PLII MUSIC and Dolby PLIIx MUSIC listening modes should not be confused with the separate PANORAMA listening mode (page 5-12).

PRE-DELAY 1 to 100ms, OFF

Adjusts delay time between the direct sound and the onset of reverberation. Higher settings make the simulated space sound larger. Because some pre-delay is inherent in all source material, you should begin with the parameter set to the lowest setting, then make adjustments accordingly. Available in NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL, CHURCH, CATHEDRAL, and all LIVE! modes.

LISTENING MODE MENU OPTION & PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS *(continued)*

RE-EQUALIZER ON, OFF

Simulates high-frequency rolloffs that occur in movie theaters. When set to ON, the MC-12 applies a high-frequency filter. When set to OFF, the MC-12 does not apply a high-frequency filter. It is recommended that you set this parameter to ON for film sources, as many films are mixed for movie theaters and might sound too bright when played back in home theaters without re-equalization. Available in L7 FILM, L7 TV, DPLII + THX, DPLIIx + THX, 5.1 L7 FILM, 5.1 L7 TV, THX ULTRA2, THX SurEX, THX, DTS (ES) L7 FILM, DTS (ES) THX ULTRA2, DTS (ES) THX, 5.1a L7 FILM, 5.1a THX ULTRA2, 5.1a THX SurEX, 5.1a THX modes.

REAR DLY OFFSET OFF, 1 to 30ms

Increases the perceived depth of the listening space by delaying the arrival time of rear speaker signals. It is recommended that you increase the setting when using side and rear speakers that are located close together or when a greater sense of depth is desired in the listening space. Available in All Logic 7 modes and PANORAMA mode.

REAR L/R -30 to +12dB, OFF

Controls the output level of the audio output connector labeled Rear L/R. Available in all except 2-CHANNEL, MONO, 5.1 2-CHANNEL, 5.1 MONO, DTS (ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL, 2CH BYPASS, and LIVE! modes.

RESET MODE

Restores the factory-default version of the selected listening mode, restoring all listening mode menu parameters to their factory-default settings. Available in all modes.

REVERB LVL -80 to +0dB, OFF

Controls the amount of added reverb. Available in all LIVE! modes.

ROLLOFF 500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF

Simulates the absorption of high frequencies in a real space. It is recommended that you begin with a low setting to simulate high-frequency absorptive spaces. Available in NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL, CHURCH, CATHEDRAL and all LIVE! modes.

SHAPE 0 TO 4

Controls the buildup of the energy that most audibly creates the sound of a real room. SHAPE and SPREAD work together – if either is set to zero, the other has no effect. Available in all LIVE! modes.

SIDE L/R -30 to +12dB, OFF

Controls the level of the Side L/R audio output connectors in the Main Zone. Available in all except 2-CHANNEL, MONO, 5.1 2-CHANNEL, 5.1 MONO, DTS (ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL, 2CH BYPASS, and LIVE! modes.

SIZE 4 to 20 or 30m

Adjusts the length of the listening space within a 4m to 20m or 30m range (depending on the listening mode). Increase the size of the space to increase the reverb effect. Available in NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL, CHURCH, CATHEDRAL, and all LIVE! modes.

CAUTION!

Setting the BASS RT, MID RT and SIZE parameters to a high value may produce undesirable or damaging audio.

SOUND STAGE FRONT, NEUTRAL, REAR

Dynamically controls the relative balance of the audio output connectors. When set to FRONT, Side L/R and Rear L/R output levels are attenuated by 6dB, shifting the perceived balance of the sound field to the front of the listening space. When set to NEUTRAL, Side L/R and Rear L/R output levels are slightly attenuated by 3dB, shifting the perceived balance of the sound field to the center of the listening space. When set to REAR, Side L/R and Rear L/R output levels are not attenuated, preserving the intended balance of the sound field. Available in all Logic 7 modes.

SOURCE RIGHT, LEFT & RIGHT, LEFT

Controls the perceived direction of the PANORAMA listening mode external calibration source signal. When RIGHT is selected, the sound is perceived to come from the right of the primary listening position. When LEFT is selected, the sound is perceived to come from the left of the primary listening position. When LEFT & RIGHT is selected, the sound is perceived to come from all around the primary listening position. Refer to the Calibration section that begins on page 5-13 for more information about the SOURCE parameter. Available in PANORAMA CALIBRATION.

Note:

The SOURCE parameter controls the perceived direction of the sound, although both the front left and right speakers generate the external calibration source signal.

SPEAKER ANGLE 10 to 90deg

Compensates for a wide or narrow speaker angle relative to the primary listening position. Select the setting closest to the angle between the front left and right speakers and the primary listening position. Refer to the Calibration section that begins on page 5-13 for more information about the SPEAKER ANGLE parameter. Available in PANORAMA CALIBRATION.

SPEECH DETECT ON, OFF

Distinguishes monaural speech from other input sources. When set to ON, effects are lowered to minimize interference and unnatural echo in monaural speech. When stereo input sources are present, the front left and right channels are independently used as inputs for ambience synthesis. When strong monaural speech is present in the input source, the monaural component of the ambience effect is reduced and the stereo component of the effect is increased. When set to OFF, the amount of ambience synthesis is dynamically controlled. Available in NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL, CHURCH, and CATHEDRAL modes.

SPREAD 0 to 100%

Controls the timing between the initial reflections that most audibly create the sound of a real room. SHAPE and SPREAD work together; if either is set to 0, the other has no effect. Available in all LIVE! modes.

SUB L/R & SUB L/R LVL OFF, -30 to +12dB

Controls the output level of the Main Zone audio output connectors labeled Subwoofer L/R. The SUB L/R parameter appears on the listening mode OUTPUT LEVELS menu. The SUB L/R LVL parameter appears on listening mode menus when the listening mode does not accommodate multi-channel output signals. Available in all except LIVE! modes.

SURR ROLLOFF 500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF

Applies high-frequency attenuation control to the audio output connectors labeled Side L/R and Rear L/R. This filter is only applied to output signals generated by the MC-12. Available in all Logic 7 modes.

LISTENING MODE MENU OPTION & PARAMETER DESCRIPTIONS *(continued)*

SURROUND DLY 0 to 15ms

Increases the perceived depth of the listening space by delaying the arrival time of signals from the side and rear speakers. It is recommended that you increase the setting when a greater sense of depth is desired in the listening space. Available in DPLII MUSIC and DPLIIx MUSIC modes.

SURROUND EX AUTO, ON, OFF

Controls the THX Surround EX decoding feature, which can be used to extract a rear channel from 5.1-channel Dolby Digital sources. When ON is selected, THX Surround EX decoding is engaged for all 5.1-channel Dolby Digital sources. When OFF is selected, THX Surround EX decoding is not engaged for all 5.1-channel Dolby Digital sources. Available in THX ULTRA2, THX SurEX, and THX modes.

When AUTO is selected, THX Surround EX decoding is engaged when a flagged 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source with THX Surround EX encoding is detected. THX Surround EX decoding is not engaged when a non-flagged 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source with or without THX Surround EX encoding is detected.

Note:

The MC-12 cannot automatically detect THX Surround EX encoding in non-flagged 5.1-channel Dolby Digital sources. A non-flagged input source does not include information in the input signal that identifies THX Surround EX encoding.

THX Surround EX listening modes are available when Dolby Digital Surround EX decoding is engaged. THX or THX ULTRA2 listening modes are available when THX Surround EX decoding is not engaged. Refer to the 5.1 THX ULTRA2, 5.1 THX SurEX, & 5.1 THX listening mode descriptions that begin on page 5-18, the DTS THX ULTRA2 & DTS-ES THX listening mode descriptions that begin on page 5-26, or the 5.1a THX ULTRA2, 5.1a THX SurEX, & 5.1a THX listening mode descriptions that begin on page 5-29 for more information.

Note the following:

- The SURROUND EX parameter AUTO setting is not available for the 5.1a THX listening modes.
- Toggling the SURROUND EX parameter setting produces low level clicks in the front speakers.
- THX Surround EX decoding cannot be engaged unless both side and rear speakers are present.
- When the Shift command bank is activated, pressing the remote control THX button while a 5.1-channel Dolby Digital source is present activates the 5.1 THX ULTRA2, 5.1 THX SurEX, or 5.1 THX listening mode. Subsequent presses adjust the SURROUND EX parameter, cycling through the AUTO, ON, and OFF settings.
- When the Shift command bank is activated, pressing the remote control THX button while a 5.1-channel analog source is present activates the 5.1a THX ULTRA2, 5.1a THX SurEX, or 5.1a THX listening mode. Subsequent presses toggle the SURROUND EX parameter between the ON and OFF settings.

SURROUND MIX -5 to +5dB

Controls the relative level of surround channel information sent to the audio output connectors labeled Front L/R. It is recommended that you set this parameter to +2dB or +3dB for all input sources. Available in 5.1 2-CHANNEL, DTS (ES) 2-CHAN, and 5.1a 2-CHANNEL modes.

TREB CUT RT 500Hz to 20kHz

Sets the frequency above which high frequencies are rolled off in the reverberated signal, causing reverberated signals to grow progressively darker. This results in a more natural sound because it simulates the effect of air absorption in a real hall. Setting this parameter to a low frequency dampens the audio as it recirculates, and consequently can actually shorten the reverb time. Available in all LIVE! modes.

VOCAL ENHANCE +6.0dB, +3.0dB, +0.0dB

Controls the level of dialog boost in the audio output connector labeled Center. Increase this setting to improve dialog intelligibility, particularly at lower volume levels. Available in all Logic 7 modes.

MODE – PARAMETER RELATIONSHIPS

The following table lists each parameter and the modes in which it is used.

The parameter...	Is used in these modes
5 SPKR ENHANCE	All L7 modes
ACADEMY FILTER	MONO LOGIC and 5.1 MONO LOGIC
AUTO AZIMUTH	L7 FILM and L7 TV
BASS CONTENT	PANORAMA
BASS ENHANCE	All L7 modes
BASS RT	CHURCH, CATHEDRAL, and all LIVE! modes
BASS XOVER	All LIVE! modes
CALIBRATION	PANORAMA
CENTER	All except 2 CH modes (2-CHANNEL, 2 CH BYPASS, DTS (ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1 2-CHANNEL, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL), MONO, 5.1 MONO, and LIVE! modes

The parameter...	Is used in these modes
CENTER DEPTH	NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL, CHURCH, CATHEDRAL
CENTER MIX	5.1 2-CHANNEL, DTS (ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL
CNTR DLY SAMPLES	5.1 2-CHANNEL, DTS (ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL
COMPRESSION	All Dolby Digital modes
CTR WIDTH	DPLII MUSIC and DPLIIx MUSIC
CUSTOM	All modes
CUSTOM VS PRESET	All modes
DIFFUSION	All LIVE! modes
DIMENSION	DPLII MUSIC and DPLIIx MUSIC
EARLY RFLX LVL	All LIVE! modes
EFFECT LVL	NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL, CHURCH, CATHEDRAL, PANORAMA, MONO LOGIC, and 5.1 MONO LOGIC
ES DECODING	All DTS modes
EX DECODING	5.1 PLIIx MOV, 5.1 PLIIx MUS, DOLBY DIGITAL EX, and DOLBY DIGITAL
FRONT STEERING	L7 TV, L7 MUSIC, L7 MUSIC SURR, all 5.1 L7 modes, all DTS L7 modes, and all 5.1a L7 modes
INPUT BALANCE	PANORAMA
LFE	All Dolby Digital, DTS, and 5.1a modes
LFE MIX	All Dolby Digital modes except MONO modes (5.1 MONO LOGIC, 5.1 MONO SURR, 5.1 MONO), all DTS modes, and all 5.1a modes except 5.1a STANDARD and 5.1a BYPASS
LISTENER POS	PANORAMA CALIBRATION

The parameter...	Is used in these modes
LIVENESS	NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL
LOW FREQ WIDTH	PANORAMA
MASTER LEVEL	5.1 2-CHANNEL, DTS (ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL
MID RT	CHURCH, CATHEDRAL, and all LIVE! modes
OUTPUT LEVELS	All except 2-CHANNEL, MONO, 5.1 2-CHANNEL, 5.1 MONO, DTS (ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL, 2CH BYPASS, and LIVE! modes
PANORAMA	DPLII MUSIC and DPLIIx MUSIC
PRE-DELAY	NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL, CHURCH, CATHEDRAL, and all LIVE! modes
RE-EQUALIZER	L7 FILM, L7 TV, DPLII + THX, DPLIIx + THX, 5.1 L7 FILM, 5.1 L7 TV, THX ULTRA2, THX SurEX, THX, DTS (ES) L7 FILM, DTS (ES) THX ULTRA2, DTS (ES) THX, 5.1a L7 FILM, 5.1a THX ULTRA2, 5.1a THX SurEX, 5.1a THX
REAR DLY OFFSET	All L7 modes and PANORAMA
REAR L/R	All except 2-CHANNEL, MONO, 5.1 2-CHANNEL, 5.1 MONO, DTS (ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL, 2CH BYPASS, and LIVE! modes
RESET MODE	All modes
REVERB LVL	All LIVE! modes
ROLLOFF	NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL, CHURCH, CATHEDRAL, and all LIVE! modes
SHAPE	All LIVE! modes
SIDE L/R	All except 2-CHANNEL, MONO, 5.1 2-CHANNEL, 5.1 MONO, DTS (ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL, 2CH BYPASS, and LIVE! modes
SIZE	NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL, CHURCH, CATHEDRAL, and all LIVE! modes
SOUND STAGE	All L7 modes

The parameter...	Is used in these modes
SOURCE	PANORAMA CALIBRATION
SPEAKER ANGLE	PANORAMA CALIBRATION
SPEECH DETECT	NIGHTCLUB, CONCERT HALL, CHURCH, and CATHEDRAL
SPREAD	All LIVE! modes
SUB L/R & SUB L/R LVL	All except LIVE! modes
SURR ROLLOFF	All L7 modes
SURROUND DLY	DPLII MUSIC and DPLIIx MUSIC
SURROUND EX	THX ULTRA2, THX SurEX, THX
SURROUND MIX	5.1 2-CHANNEL, DTS (ES) 2-CHAN, 5.1a 2-CHANNEL
TREB CUT RT	All LIVE! modes
VOCAL ENHANCE	All L7 modes

6

Troubleshooting & Maintenance

Troubleshooting.....6-2

Routine Maintenance 6-3

Restoring Factory-default Settings 6-4

TROUBLESHOOTING

The MC-12 does not power on.

1. Make sure the rear panel power switch is set to the I ("on") position.
2. Attempt to power on the MC-12 with the front panel **Standby** button and remote control **On** button.
3. Examine the power cord to ensure a good connection between the rear panel AC input connector and the wall outlet.
4. Check the electrical circuit and breaker.

The remote control does not work.

1. Eliminate obstructions between the remote control and the front panel IR receiver. When the MC-12 is not using the rear panel IR IN connector, the remote control must be in line-of-sight with the front panel IR receiver for proper operation. The remote control might also become unreliable if strong sunlight or fluorescent light is shining on the IR receiver.
2. Make sure the remote control batteries are correctly inserted with the proper polarity.
3. Replace the remote control batteries. When the batteries are low on power, the remote control enters a low-voltage condition that prevents it from operating the MC-12.

The MC-12 is powered on, but there is no audio.

1. Examine the audio cables to ensure a good connection between the MC-12 and all associated power amplifiers.
2. Make sure volume level is audible. Volume level can be increased with the front panel volume knob or the remote control VOL + and – buttons.
3. Make sure audio has not been muted. The message "MUTE ON" or "FULL MUTE ON" will appear in the on-screen and front panel displays when audio has been muted. To deactivate mute, press the **Mute** button or adjust the volume level.
4. Check the INPUT SETUP menu DIGITAL IN and ANALOG IN parameters to ensure the appropriate audio connector is assigned to the selected input.
5. Make sure the MC-12 is receiving an audio signal. To do this, follow the instructions that begin on page 2-20 to open the STATUS menu for the current input source.
6. Make sure all associated power amplifiers are powered on.

Dialog sounds muffled.

If the speaker setup does not include a center speaker, make sure a custom – as opposed to a THX – speaker setup is selected. Then, make sure the CUSTOM SETUP menu CENTER parameter is set to NONE.

A humming sound is present in the audio.

1. If a cable TV connection is present, disconnect the cable from the wall outlet. If this eliminates the humming sound, a ground loop isolation device is required. Contact your dealer or the cable provider for assistance.
2. Disconnect components one at a time to isolate the problem. Once the problem is identified, make sure the associated component is properly grounded and connected to the same electrical circuit as the MC-12.

The MC-12 is powered on, but there is no video.

1. Examine the video cables – particularly the S-video cables – to ensure a good connection to the associated component.
2. Check the INPUT SETUP menu VIDEO IN and COMPONENT IN parameters to ensure the appropriate video connector is assigned to the selected input.

RF interference is present in the audio or video.

1. Make sure the MC-12 is not positioned near unshielded TV or FM antennas, cable TV decoders, and other RF-emitting devices.
2. Replace unshielded cables with shielded cables wherever possible.

The MC-12 is exhibiting erratic behavior.

1. Set the rear panel power switch to the O ("off") position. Wait 10 seconds. Then, set the rear panel power switch to the I ("on") position.
2. Use the MC-12 configuration tool to download the current MC-12 configuration to a personal computer (PC) or document all user-defined settings on the installation worksheet that begins on page A-20. Then, follow the instructions on the next page to restore factory-default settings.

If all else fails . . .

1. Set the rear panel power switch to the O ("off") position. Wait 10 seconds. Then, set the rear panel power switch to the I ("on") position.
2. Use the MC-12 configuration tool to download the current MC-12 configuration to a personal computer (PC) or document all user-defined settings on the installation worksheet that begins on page A-20. Then, follow the instructions on page 6-4 to restore factory-default settings.
3. Contact an authorized Lexicon dealer.
4. Contact Lexicon customer service at 781-280-0300 or www.lexicon.com.

Note:

Visit the knowledgebase at http://www.lexicon.com/kbase for answers to frequently asked questions and additional troubleshooting information.

ROUTINE MAINTENANCE

The bulleted items below describe routine maintenance that should be performed on a periodic basis.

- Clean the MC-12 exterior surface with a soft, lint-free cloth. Do not use alcohol, benzene, acetone-based cleaners, or strong commercial cleaners. Do not use a cloth made with steel wool or metal polish. If the MC-12 is exposed to a dusty environment, a low-pressure blower can be used to remove dust from its exterior surface.
- Replace the remote control batteries as needed. The remote control requires two AA batteries. When these batteries are low on power, the remote control enters a low-voltage condition that prevents it from operating the MC-12. Normal operation will resume when new batteries are installed.

RESTORING FACTORY-DEFAULT SETTINGS

When factory-default settings are restored, all parameters and user-defined values are restored to their factory-default settings. Before restoring factory-default settings, you should record all user-defined settings.

To restore factory-default settings:

1. Select one of the following options to record user defined settings:
   - Use the Configuration Tool to download current MC-12 settings to a personal computer (PC). The configuration tool is available at www.lexicon.com/mc12/downloads. asp.
   - Record user-defined settings on the installation worksheet that begins on page A-20.
2. If applicable, press the **Standby Button** to activate standby mode.
3. When standby mode is activated, press the **Standby Button** to deactivate standby mode.
4. After the Standby Button is pressed, quickly press and hold the **Mute** button until the FACTORY SETTINGS menu shown above opens on the on-screen and front panel displays.

   Note:

   The Mute button must be pressed within 2 seconds of deactivating standby mode. Otherwise, the "MUTE ON" message will appear on the on-screen and front panel displays. If this occurs, too much time has passed. Begin again with step 2.
5. Press the ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons to highlight the desired option.
   - Highlight **RESTORE DEFAULTS** to restore factory default settings.
   - Highlight **EXIT** to close the FACTORY SETTINGS menu without restoring factory-default settings.
6. When the desired option is highlighted, press the ▶ arrow button to select this option.
   - If the RESTORE DEFAULTS option was selected, the FACTORY SETTINGS message shown on the previous page will appear on the on-screen and front panel displays. When this message appears, press a front panel or remote control button to restart the MC-12.
   - If the EXIT option is selected, the FACTORY SETTINGS menu will close and the two-line status will open on the on-screen and front panel displays

A

Appendix

Specifications A-2
Declaration of Conformity A-4
Menu Tree A-5
Installation Worksheet A-20

SPECIFICATIONS

Audio Input & Output Connectors	
Analog Audio Inputs	• 8 stereo (RCA) *or* 5 stereo and one 5.1-channel connectors
Digital Audio Inputs	• 6 S/PDIF coaxial (RCA), 6 S/PDIF optical (5 TosLink and 1 optical mini jack), and 1 AES/EBU (XLR) connectors • Coaxial and optical input connectors conform to IEC-958, S/PDIF standards • Accepts 44.1, 48, 88.2 and 96kHz sample rates • Accepts 16-24 bits PCM audio, Dolby Digital, DTS and DTS-ES discrete data formats
Main Zone Audio Outputs	• 12 unbalanced (RCA) and 12 balanced (XLR, MC-12 Balanced only) connectors for Front L/R, Center, LFE, Subwoofer L/R, Side L/R, and Rear L/R, and Auxiliary L/R
Zone 2 Audio Outputs	• 2 unbalanced (RCA, 1 fixed and 1 variable output level) stereo connectors and 1 balanced stereo connector (XLR, variable output level, MC-12 Balanced only)
Record Zone Audio Outputs	• 2 unbalanced (RCA, 1 fixed and 1 variable output level) stereo connectors • 1 S/PDIF coaxial (RDA) and 1 S/PDIF optical (TosLink) connector (in parallel)

Main Zone Audio Performance	
A/D Conversion	• 24-bit, 96kHz, dual-bit ΔΣ architecture
D/A Conversion	• 24-bit, 44.1 to 192kHz, multi-bit ΔΣ architecture
Frequency Response	• 10Hz to 20kHz, +0.1dB/-0.25dB, -0.75dB at 40kHz, reference 1kHz
THD + Noise	• Below 0.003% at 1kHz, maximum output level
Dynamic Range	• 108dB minimum, 111dB typical, 22kHz bandwidth
Signal-to-Noise Ratio	• 108dB minimum, 111dB typical, 22kHz bandwidth
Input Sensitivity	• 200mVrms (2Vrms for maximum output level) at 0dB input gain
Input Impedance	• 100kΩ in parallel with 150pF

Main Zone Audio Performance	
Output Level	• 150mVrms typical, 6Vrms maximum (RCA connectors) • 300mVrms typical, 12Vrms maximum (XLR connectors, MC-12 Balanced only) • Maximum value with full-scale input signal and volume at +12dB
Output Impedance	• 100Ω in parallel with 150pF (RCA connectors) • 50Ω in parallel with 150pF (XLR connectors, MC-12 Balanced only)

Zone 2 & Record Zone Audio Performance	
A/D Conversion	• 24-bit, 44.1 to 96kHz, dual-bit ΔΣ architecture (Record Zone only)
D/A Conversion	• 24-bit, 44.1 to 192kHz, multi-bit ΔΣ architecture
Frequency Response	• 10Hz to 20kHz, +0.1dB/-0.25dB, -0.75dB at 40kHz, reference 1kHz
THD + Noise	• Below 0.005% at 1kHz, maximum output level
Dynamic Range	• 105dB minimum, 108dB typical, 22kHz bandwidth
Signal-to-Noise Ratio	• 105dB minimum, 108dB typical, 22kHz bandwidth
Input Sensitivity	• 200mVrms (4Vrms for maximum output level)
Input Impedance	• 100kΩ in parallel with 150pF
Output Level	• 200mVrms typical, 4Vrms maximum (RCA connectors) • 400mVrms typical, 8Vrms maximum (XLR connectors, Zone 2 only, MC-12 Balanced only) • Maximum value with full-scale input signal and volume at 0dB
Output Impedance	• 100Ω in parallel with 150pF (RCA connectors) • 50Ω in parallel with 150pF (XLR connectors, Zone 2 only, MC-12 Balanced only)

Video Input & Output Connectors	
Video Inputs	• 5 composite (RCA), 8 S-video, and 4 component video (3 RCA and 1 BNC))
Video Outputs	• 4 composite (RCA, 2 monitor and 2 Record Zone), 2 S-video (2 monitor and 2 Record Zone), and 1 component (BNC)

Composite & S-video Performance	
Compatibility	• NTSC, PAL, and SECAM
Switching	• Active
Output Level	• 1.0V peak-to-peak
Impedance	• 75Ω
Input Return Loss	• >40dB
Differential Gain	• <0.5%
Differential Phase	• <0.5°
Bandwidth	• >25MHz
K Factor	• <0.3%
Gain	• ±0.15dB
Signal-to-Noise Ratio	• >70dB
Frequency Response	• 10Hz to 10MHz + 0.1/-0.3dB

Component Video Performance	
Compatibility	• 3-channel (Y, Pr, Pb), format-independent
Switching	• Passive
Impedence	• 75Ω
Insertion Loss	• <3dB
Bandwidth	• >300MHz

Microphone Input Connectors	
Inputs	• 4 3.5 miniature phone jacks
Input Sensitivity	• 10mVrms (400mV maximum input level)
Input Impedence	• 20kΩ (accepts balanced or unbalanced input signals)

Other	
Trigger Outputs	• 1 power on/off and 1 programmable connector on detachable screw terminals (+12 VDC, 0.5 amps each)
RS-232 Serial Input/ Output	• 2 9-pin D-sub connectors
Power Requirements	• 90-250 VAC, 50-60Hz, 60W (universal line input), detachable power cord
MC-12 Dimensions & Weight	• Height (with feet): 5.2 inches (132mm) • Width: 17.3 inches (440mm) • Depth: 14.85 inches (377mm) • Weight: 36lbs (16.4kg)
MC-12 Balanced Dimensions & Weight	• Height (with feet): 6.63 inches (169mm) • Width: 17.3 inches (440mm) • Depth: 14.85 inches (377mm) • Weight: 45lbs (20.5kg)
Rack Mounting	• Optional brackets are available for installation in a standard 19" equipment rack (2 rack units required for MC-12; 3 rack units required for MC-12 Balanced.)
Environment	• Operating Temperature: 0° to 35°C (32° to 95°F) • Storage Temperature: -30° to 75°C (-22° to 167°F) • Relative Humidity: 95% maximum without condensation
Remote Control	• Hand-held, backlit infrared remote control unit • Requires 2 AA batteries (Alkaline batteries recommended)

Specifications are subject to change without notice.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Application of Council Directive(s):
89/336/EEC and 93/68/EEC

Standard(s) to Which Conformity is Declared:
EN55022:1998, EN55024:1998, EN61000-3-2: 2000, EN61000-3-3:2000, and EN60065: 1998

Manufacturer: Harman Specialty Group
3 Oak Park
Bedford, MA 01730-1413 USA

The equipment identified here conforms to the Directive(s) and Standard(s) specified above.

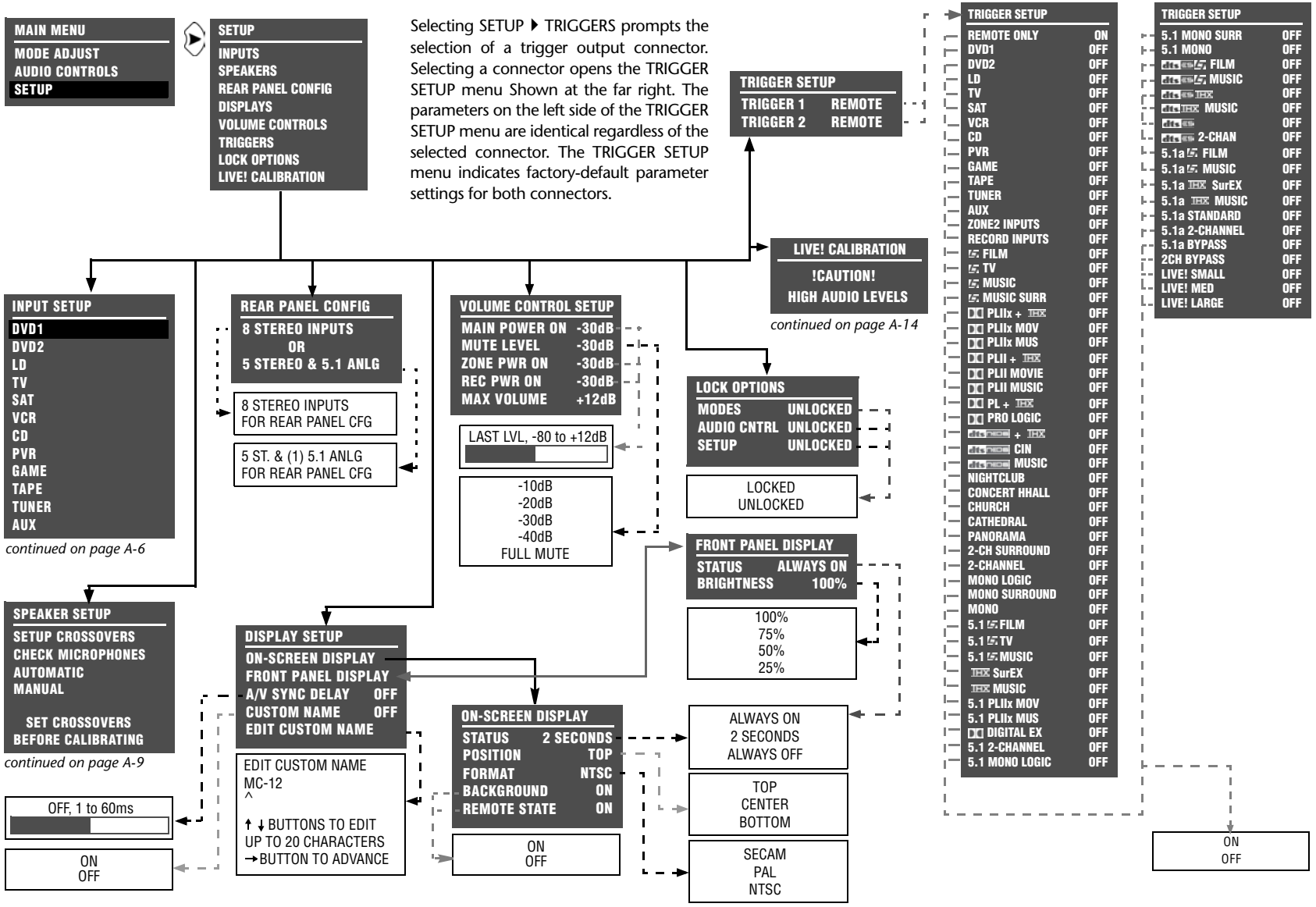
Type of Equipment: Digital Controller

Model: Lexicon MC-12

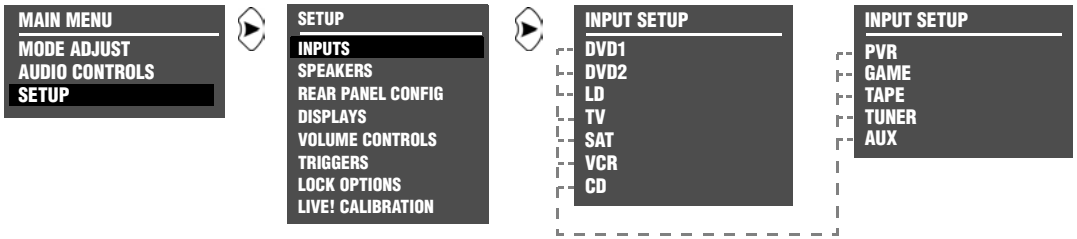
Date: June 2001

Harman Specialty Group
Vice President of Engineering
3 Oak Park
Bedford, MA 01730-1413 USA
Tel: 781-280-0300
Fax: 781-280-0490

MENU TREE


MAIN MENU
MODE ADJUST
AUDIO CONTROLS
SETUP
SETUP
INPUTS
SPEAKERS
REAR PANEL CONFIG
DISPLAYS
VOLUME CONTROLS
TRIGGERS
LOCK OPTIONS
LIVE! CALIBRATION
Selecting SETUP ▸ TRIGGERS prompts the selection of a trigger output connector. Selecting a connector opens the TRIGGER SETUP menu Shown at the far right. The parameters on the left side of the TRIGGER SETUP menu are identical regardless of the selected connector. The TRIGGER SETUP menu indicates factory-default parameter settings for both connectors.
TRIGGER SETUP
TRIGGER 1 REMOTE
TRIGGER 2 REMOTE
LIVE! CALIBRATION
!CAUTION!
HIGH AUDIO LEVELS
continued on page A-14
INPUT SETUP
DVD1
DVD2
LD
TV
SAT
VCR
CD
PVR
GAME
TAPE
TUNER
AUX
continued on page A-6
REAR PANEL CONFIG
8 STEREO INPUTS
OR
5 STEREO & 5.1 ANLG
8 STEREO INPUTS FOR REAR PANEL CFG
5 ST. & (1) 5.1 ANLG FOR REAR PANEL CFG
VOLUME CONTROL SETUP
MAIN POWER ON -30dB
MUTE LEVEL -30dB
ZONE PWR ON -30dB
REC PWR ON -30dB
MAX VOLUME +12dB
LAST LVL, -80 to +12dB
-10dB
-20dB
-30dB
-40dB
FULL MUTE
LOCK OPTIONS
MODES UNLOCKED
AUDIO CNTRL UNLOCKED
SETUP UNLOCKED
LOCKED
UNLOCKED
FRONT PANEL DISPLAY
STATUS ALWAYS ON
BRIGHTNESS 100%
100%
75%
50%
25%
SPEAKER SETUP
SETUP CROSSOVERS
CHECK MICROPHONES
AUTOMATIC
MANUAL
SET CROSSOVERS
BEFORE CALIBRATING
continued on page A-9
DISPLAY SETUP
ON-SCREEN DISPLAY
FRONT PANEL DISPLAY
A/V SYNC DELAY OFF
CUSTOM NAME OFF
EDIT CUSTOM NAME
EDIT CUSTOM NAME
MC-12
^
↑ ↓ BUTTONS TO EDIT
UP TO 20 CHARACTERS
→BUTTON TO ADVANCE
ON-SCREEN DISPLAY
STATUS 2 SECONDS
POSITION TOP
FORMAT NTSC
BACKGROUND ON
REMOTE STATE ON
ALWAYS ON
2 SECONDS
ALWAYS OFF
TOP
CENTER
BOTTOM
SECAM
PAL
NTSC
ON
OFF
OFF, 1 to 60ms
ON
OFF
TRIGGER SETUP
REMOTE ONLY ON
DVD1 OFF
DVD2 OFF
LD OFF
TV OFF
SAT OFF
VCR OFF
CD OFF
PVR OFF
GAME OFF
TAPE OFF
TUNER OFF
AUX OFF
ZONE2 INPUTS OFF
RECORD INPUTS OFF
FILM OFF
TV OFF
MUSIC OFF
MUSIC SURR OFF
PLIIx + OFF
PLIIx MOV OFF
PLIIx MUS OFF
PLII + OFF
PLII MOVIE OFF
PLII MUSIC OFF
PL + OFF
PRO LOGIC OFF
+ OFF
CIN OFF
MUSIC OFF
NIGHTCLUB OFF
CONCERT HHALL OFF
CHURCH OFF
CATHEDRAL OFF
PANORAMA OFF
2-CH SURROUND OFF
2-CHANNEL OFF
MONO LOGIC OFF
MONO SURROUND OFF
MONO OFF
5.1 FILM OFF
5.1 TV OFF
5.1 MUSIC OFF
SurEX OFF
MUSIC OFF
5.1 PLIIx MOV OFF
5.1 PLIIx MUS OFF
DIGITAL EX OFF
5.1 2-CHANNEL OFF
5.1 MONO LOGIC OFF
TRIGGER SETUP
5.1 MONO SURR OFF
5.1 MONO OFF
FILM OFF
MUSIC OFF
OFF
MUSIC OFF
OFF
2-CHAN OFF
5.1a FILM OFF
5.1a MUSIC OFF
5.1a SurEX OFF
5.1a MUSIC OFF
5.1a STANDARD OFF
5.1a 2-CHANNEL OFF
5.1a BYPASS OFF
2CH BYPASS OFF
LIVE! SMALL OFF
LIVE! MED OFF
LIVE! LARGE OFF
ON
OFF

MENU TREE *(continued)*



Selecting SETUP ▸ INPUTS prompts the selection of the desired input (for example, DVD1). Selecting an input opens the corresponding INPUT SETUP menu shown below. The parameters on the left side of the INPUT SETUP menus are identical regardless of which input is selected. The parameter settings on the right side are adjustable. Default parameter settings differ from input to input. The INPUT SETUP menus shown below indicate default parameter settings for each input.

DVD1 INPUT SETUP	
NAME	DVD1
DIGITAL IN	COAX-1
ANALOG IN	NONE
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO
VIDEO IN	S-VIDEO-1
COMPONENT IN	1
2-CH	FILM
D	5.1 FILM
dts ES	dts ES FILM
5.1a	5.1a FILM
MIC	LIVE! MED
MAIN ADVANCED	
ZONE2 IN	DIGITAL
RECORD IN	DIGITAL
RECORD ADVANCED	

LD INPUT SETUP	
NAME	LD
DIGITAL IN	COAX-3
ANALOG IN	ANALOG-1
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO
VIDEO IN	S-VIDEO-3
COMPONENT IN	1
2-CH	FILM
D	5.1 FILM
dts ES	dts ES FILM
5.1a	5.1a FILM
MIC	LIVE! MED
MAIN ADVANCED	
ZONE2 IN	ANLG
RECORD IN	ANLG
RECORD ADVANCED	

SAT INPUT SETUP	
NAME	SAT
DIGITAL IN	OPTICAL-2
ANALOG IN	ANALOG-3
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO
VIDEO IN	S-VIDEO-5
COMPONENT IN	4
2-CH	TV
D	5.1 TV
dts ES	dts ES FILM
5.1a	5.1a FILM
MIC	LIVE! MED
MAIN ADVANCED	
ZONE2 IN	ANLG
RECORD IN	ANLG
RECORD ADVANCED	

CD INPUT SETUP	
NAME	CD
DIGITAL IN	COAX-4
ANALOG IN	NONE
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO
VIDEO IN	COMPOSITE-1
COMPONENT IN	1
2-CH	MUSIC
D	5.1 MUSIC
dts ES	dts ES MUSIC
5.1a	5.1a FILM
MIC	LIVE! MED
MAIN ADVANCED	
ZONE2 IN	DIGITAL
RECORD IN	DIGITAL
RECORD ADVANCED	

GAME INPUT SETUP	
NAME	GAME
DIGITAL IN	OPTICAL-4
ANALOG IN	ANALOG-6
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO
VIDEO IN	COMPOSITE-2
COMPONENT IN	1
2-CH	FILM
D	5.1 FILM
dts ES	dts ES FILM
5.1a	5.1a FILM
MIC	LIVE! MED
MAIN ADVANCED	
ZONE2 IN	DIGITAL
RECORD IN	DIGITAL
RECORD ADVANCED	

TUNER INPUT SETUP	
NAME	TUNER
DIGITAL IN	NONE
ANALOG IN	ANALOG-8
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO
VIDEO IN	NONE
COMPONENT IN	1
2-CH	MUSIC
D	5.1 MUSIC
dts ES	dts ES MUSIC
5.1a	5.1a FILM
MIC	LIVE! MED
MAIN ADVANCED	
ZONE2 IN	ANLG
RECORD IN	ANLG
RECORD ADVANCED	

DVD2 INPUT SETUP	
NAME	DVD2
DIGITAL IN	COAX-2
ANALOG IN	NONE
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO
VIDEO IN	S-VIDEO-2
COMPONENT IN	2
2-CH	FILM
D	5.1 FILM
dts ES	dts ES FILM
5.1a	5.1a FILM
MIC	LIVE! MED
MAIN ADVANCED	
ZONE2 IN	DIGITAL
RECORD IN	DIGITAL
RECORD ADVANCED	

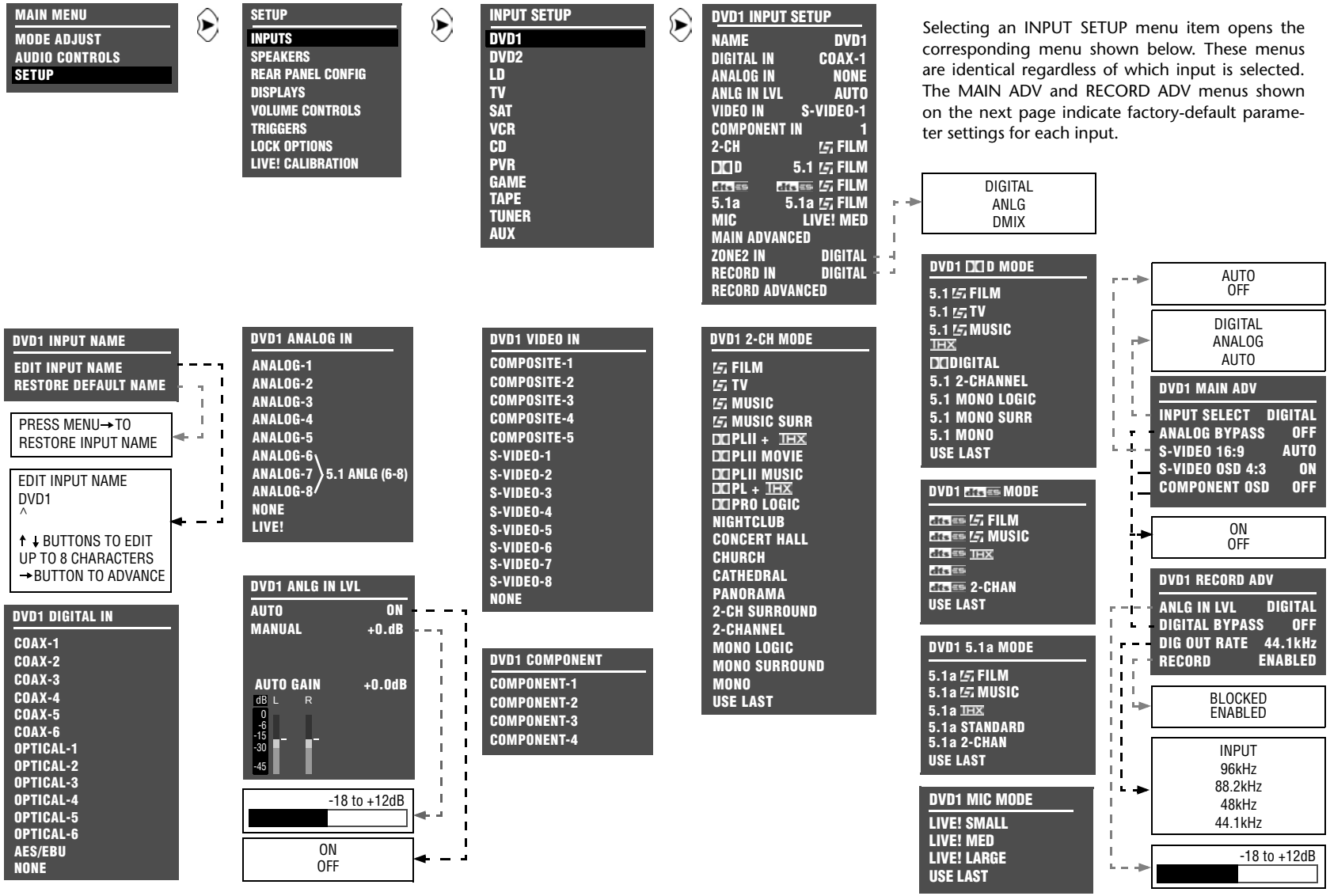
TV INPUT SETUP	
NAME	TV
DIGITAL IN	OPTICAL-1
ANALOG IN	ANALOG-2
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO
VIDEO IN	S-VIDEO-4
COMPONENT IN	3
2-CH	TV
D	5.1 TV
dts ES	dts ES FILM
5.1a	5.1a FILM
MIC	LIVE! MED
MAIN ADVANCED	
ZONE2 IN	ANLG
RECORD IN	ANLG
RECORD ADVANCED	

VCR INPUT SETUP	
NAME	VCR
DIGITAL IN	NONE
ANALOG IN	ANALOG-4
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO
VIDEO IN	S-VIDEO-6
COMPONENT IN	1
2-CH	FILM
D	5.1 FILM
dts ES	dts ES FILM
5.1a	5.1a FILM
MIC	LIVE! MED
MAIN ADVANCED	
ZONE2 IN	ANLG
RECORD IN	ANLG
RECORD ADVANCED	

PVR INPUT SETUP	
NAME	PVR
DIGITAL IN	OPTICAL-3
ANALOG IN	ANALOG-5
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO
VIDEO IN	S-VIDEO-7
COMPONENT IN	1
2-CH	TV
D	5.1 TV
dts ES	dts ES FILM
5.1a	5.1a FILM
MIC	LIVE! MED
MAIN ADVANCED	
ZONE2 IN	DIGITAL
RECORD IN	DIGITAL
RECORD ADVANCED	

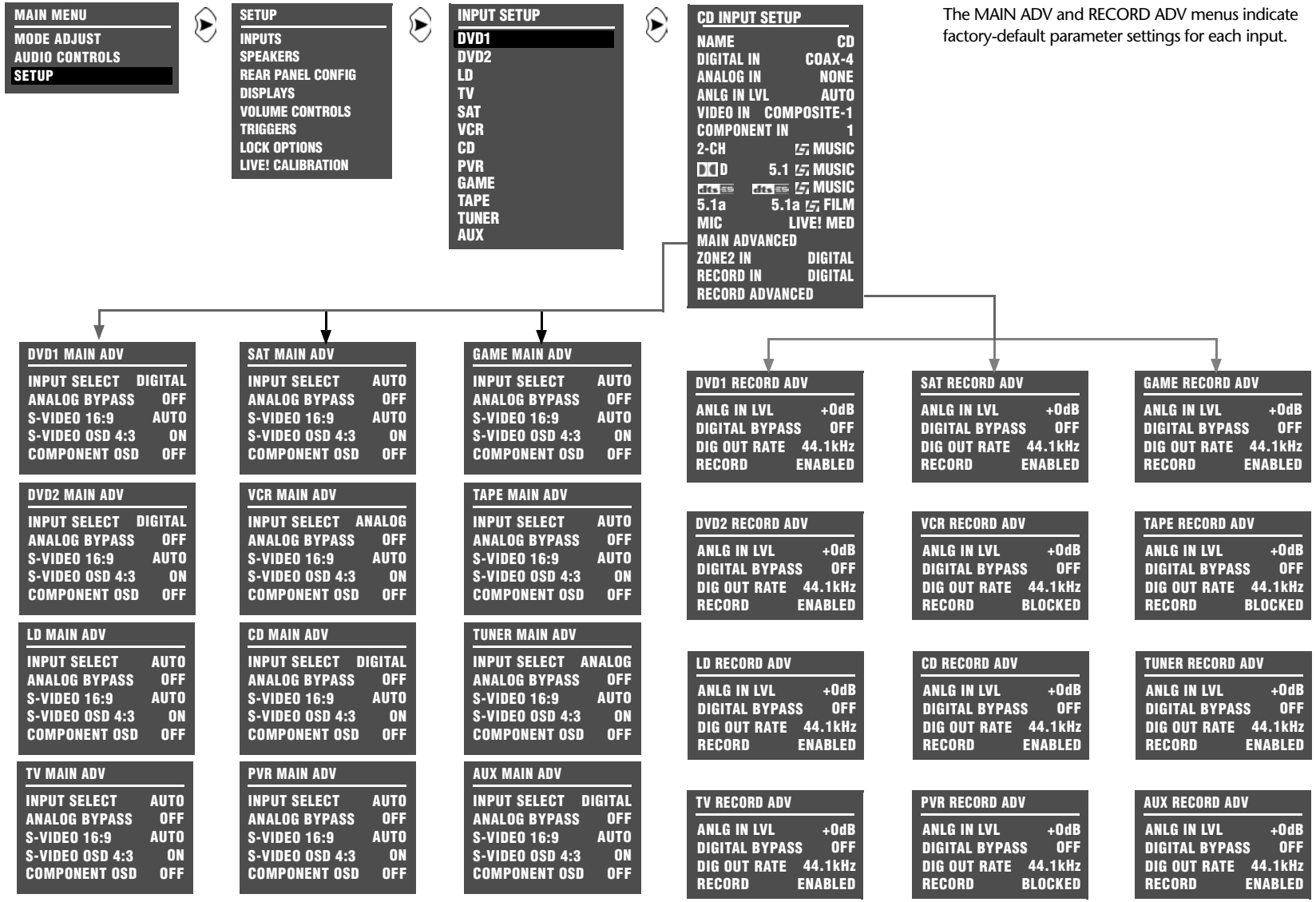
TAPE INPUT SETUP	
NAME	TAPE
DIGITAL IN	OPTICAL-5
ANALOG IN	ANALOG-7
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO
VIDEO IN	NONE
COMPONENT IN	1
2-CH	MUSIC
D	5.1 MUSIC
dts ES	dts ES MUSIC
5.1a	5.1a FILM
MIC	LIVE! MED
MAIN ADVANCED	
ZONE2 IN	ANLG
RECORD IN	ANLG
RECORD ADVANCED	

AUX INPUT SETUP	
NAME	AUX
DIGITAL IN	OPTICAL-6
ANALOG IN	NONE
ANLG IN LVL	AUTO
VIDEO IN	COMPOSITE-3
COMPONENT IN	1
2-CH	MUSIC
D	5.1 MUSIC
dts ES	dts ES MUSIC
5.1a	5.1a FILM
MIC	LIVE! MED
MAIN ADVANCED	
ZONE2 IN	DIGITAL
RECORD IN	DIGITAL
RECORD ADVANCED	

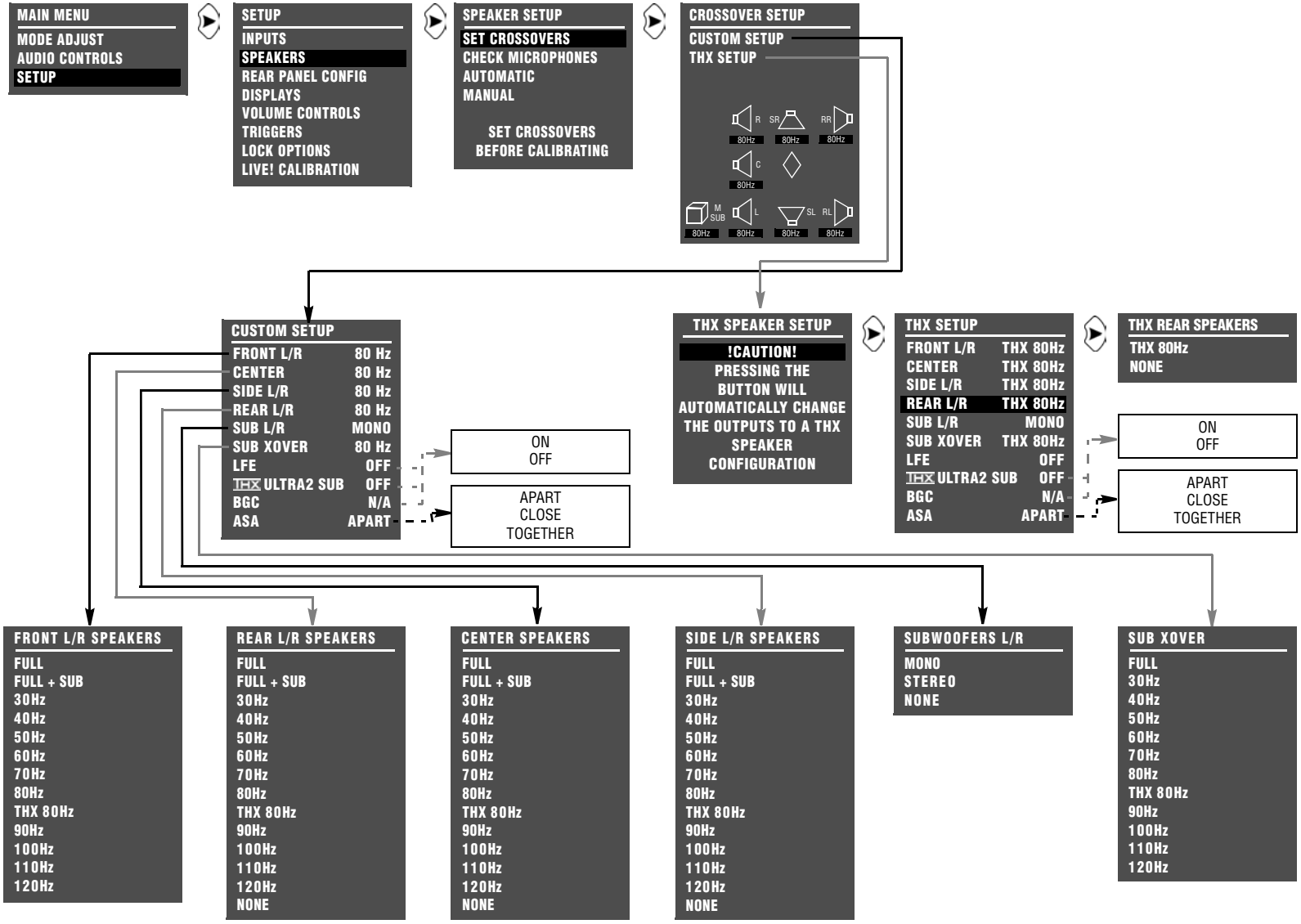


Selecting an INPUT SETUP menu item opens the corresponding menu shown below. These menus are identical regardless of which input is selected. The MAIN ADV and RECORD ADV menus shown on the next page indicate factory-default parameter settings for each input.

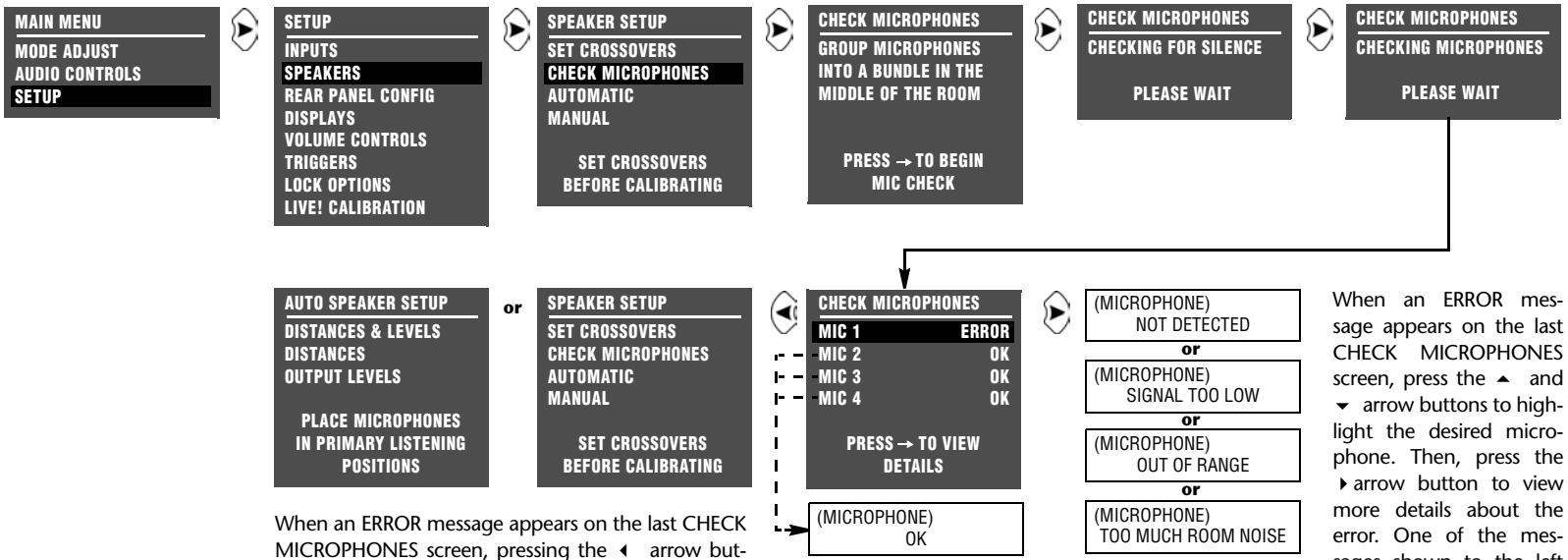
MENU TREE *(continued)*



The MAIN ADV and RECORD ADV menus indicate factory-default parameter settings for each input.

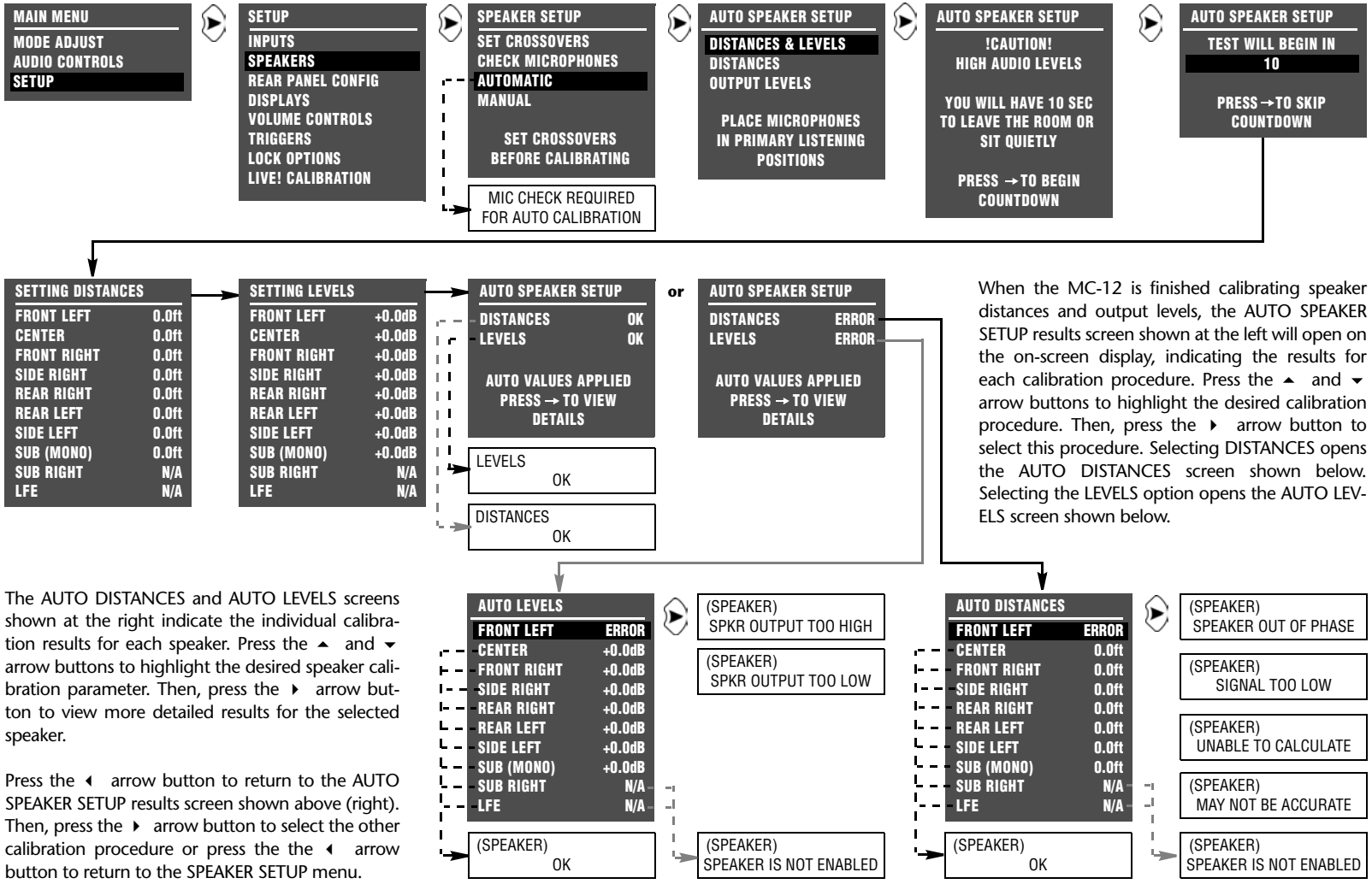

MAIN MENU
MODE ADJUST
AUDIO CONTROLS
SETUP
SETUP
INPUTS
SPEAKERS
REAR PANEL CONFIG
DISPLAYS
VOLUME CONTROLS
TRIGGERS
LOCK OPTIONS
LIVE! CALIBRATION
SPEAKER SETUP
SET CROSSOVERS
CHECK MICROPHONES
AUTOMATIC
MANUAL
SET CROSSOVERS
BEFORE CALIBRATING
CROSSOVER SETUP
CUSTOM SETUP
THX SETUP
R SR RR
C
M SUB L SL RL
80Hz
CUSTOM SETUP
FRONT L/R 80 Hz
CENTER 80 Hz
SIDE L/R 80 Hz
REAR L/R 80 Hz
SUB L/R MONO
SUB XOVER 80 Hz
LFE OFF
THX ULTRA2 SUB OFF
BGC N/A
ASA APART
ON
OFF
APART
CLOSE
TOGETHER
THX SPEAKER SETUP
!CAUTION!
PRESSING THE
BUTTON WILL
AUTOMATICALLY CHANGE
THE OUTPUTS TO A THX
SPEAKER
CONFIGURATION
THX SETUP
FRONT L/R THX 80Hz
CENTER THX 80Hz
SIDE L/R THX 80Hz
REAR L/R THX 80Hz
SUB L/R MONO
SUB XOVER THX 80Hz
LFE OFF
THX ULTRA2 SUB OFF
BGC N/A
ASA APART
ON
OFF
APART
CLOSE
TOGETHER
THX REAR SPEAKERS
THX 80Hz
NONE
FRONT L/R SPEAKERS
FULL
FULL + SUB
30Hz
40Hz
50Hz
60Hz
70Hz
80Hz
THX 80Hz
90Hz
100Hz
110Hz
120Hz
REAR L/R SPEAKERS
FULL
FULL + SUB
30Hz
40Hz
50Hz
60Hz
70Hz
80Hz
THX 80Hz
90Hz
100Hz
110Hz
120Hz
NONE
CENTER SPEAKERS
FULL
FULL + SUB
30Hz
40Hz
50Hz
60Hz
70Hz
80Hz
THX 80Hz
90Hz
100Hz
110Hz
120Hz
NONE
SIDE L/R SPEAKERS
FULL
FULL + SUB
30Hz
40Hz
50Hz
60Hz
70Hz
80Hz
THX 80Hz
90Hz
100Hz
110Hz
120Hz
NONE
SUBWOOFERS L/R
MONO
STEREO
NONE
SUB XOVER
FULL
30Hz
40Hz
50Hz
60Hz
70Hz
80Hz
THX 80Hz
90Hz
100Hz
110Hz
120Hz

MENU TREE *(continued)*



When an ERROR message appears on the last CHECK MICROPHONES screen, pressing the ◂ arrow button opens the SPEAKER SETUP menu. When no ERROR message appears on the last CHECK MICROPHONES screen, pressing the ◂ arrow button opens the AUTO SPEAKER SETUP menu.

When an ERROR message appears on the last CHECK MICROPHONES screen, press the ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons to highlight the desired microphone. Then, press the ▸ arrow button to view more details about the error. One of the messages shown to the left will appear in the on-screen display.

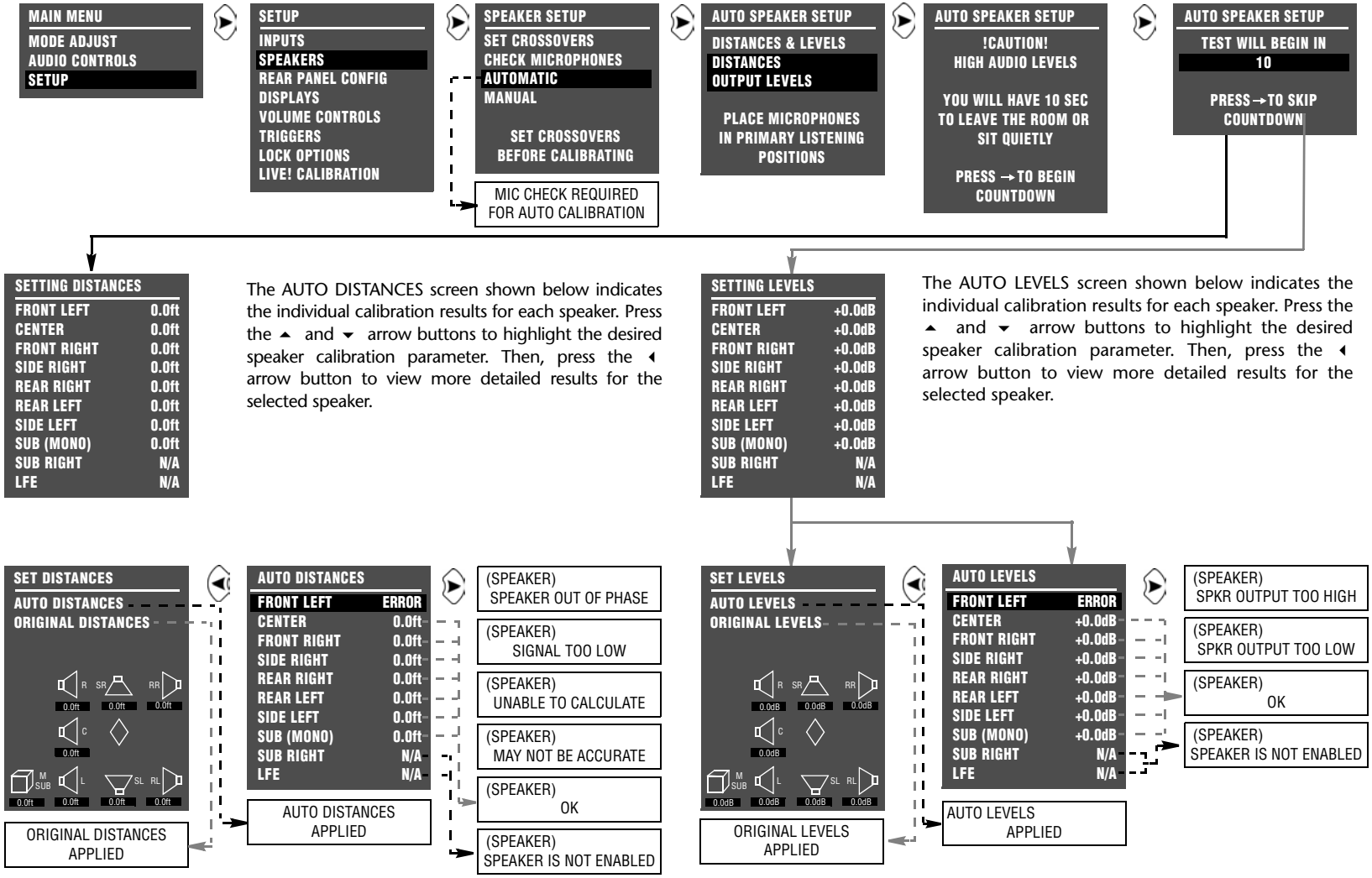


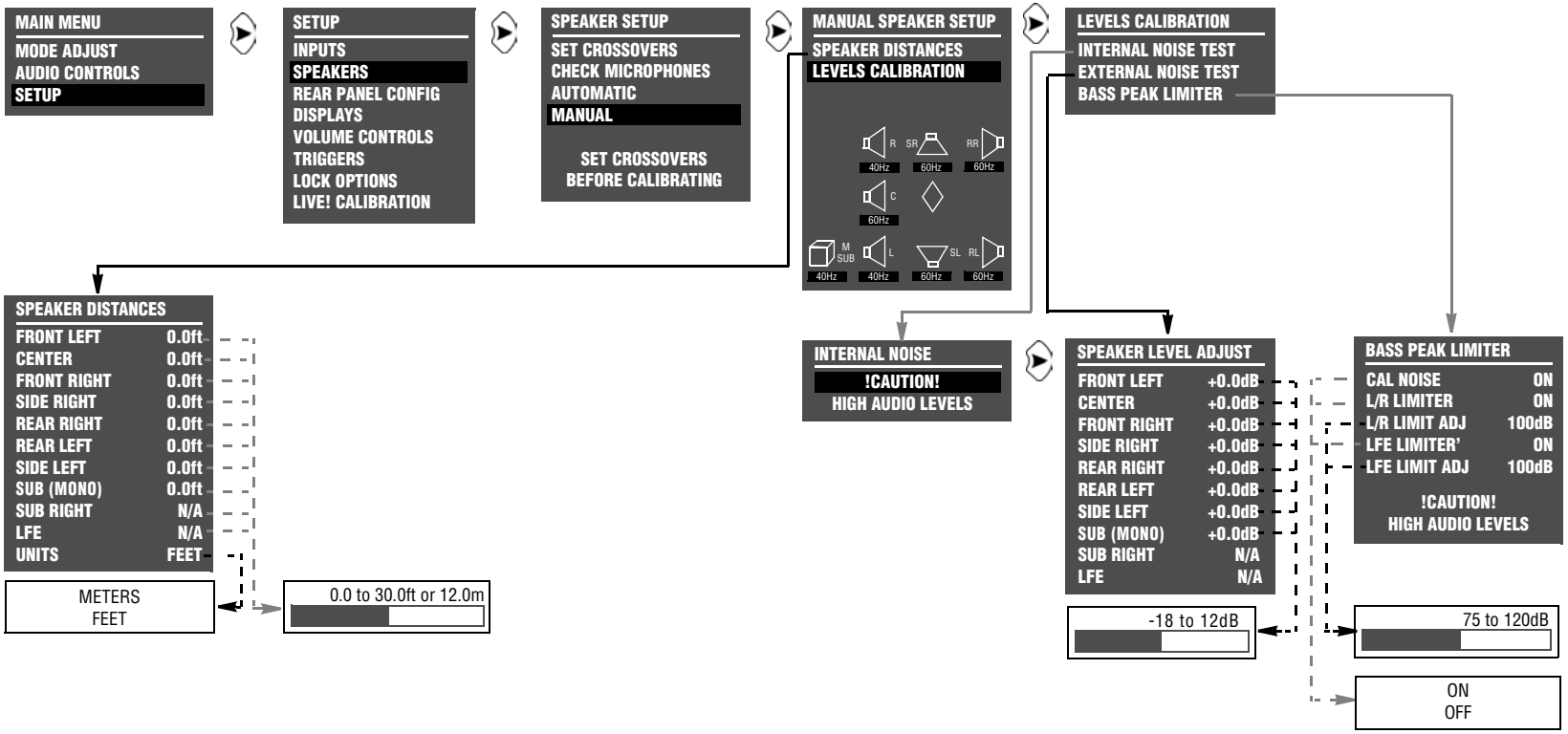
When the MC-12 is finished calibrating speaker distances and output levels, the AUTO SPEAKER SETUP results screen shown at the left will open on the on-screen display, indicating the results for each calibration procedure. Press the ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons to highlight the desired calibration procedure. Then, press the ▶ arrow button to select this procedure. Selecting DISTANCES opens the AUTO DISTANCES screen shown below. Selecting the LEVELS option opens the AUTO LEVELS screen shown below.

The AUTO DISTANCES and AUTO LEVELS screens shown at the right indicate the individual calibration results for each speaker. Press the ▲ and ▼ arrow buttons to highlight the desired speaker calibration parameter. Then, press the ▶ arrow button to view more detailed results for the selected speaker.

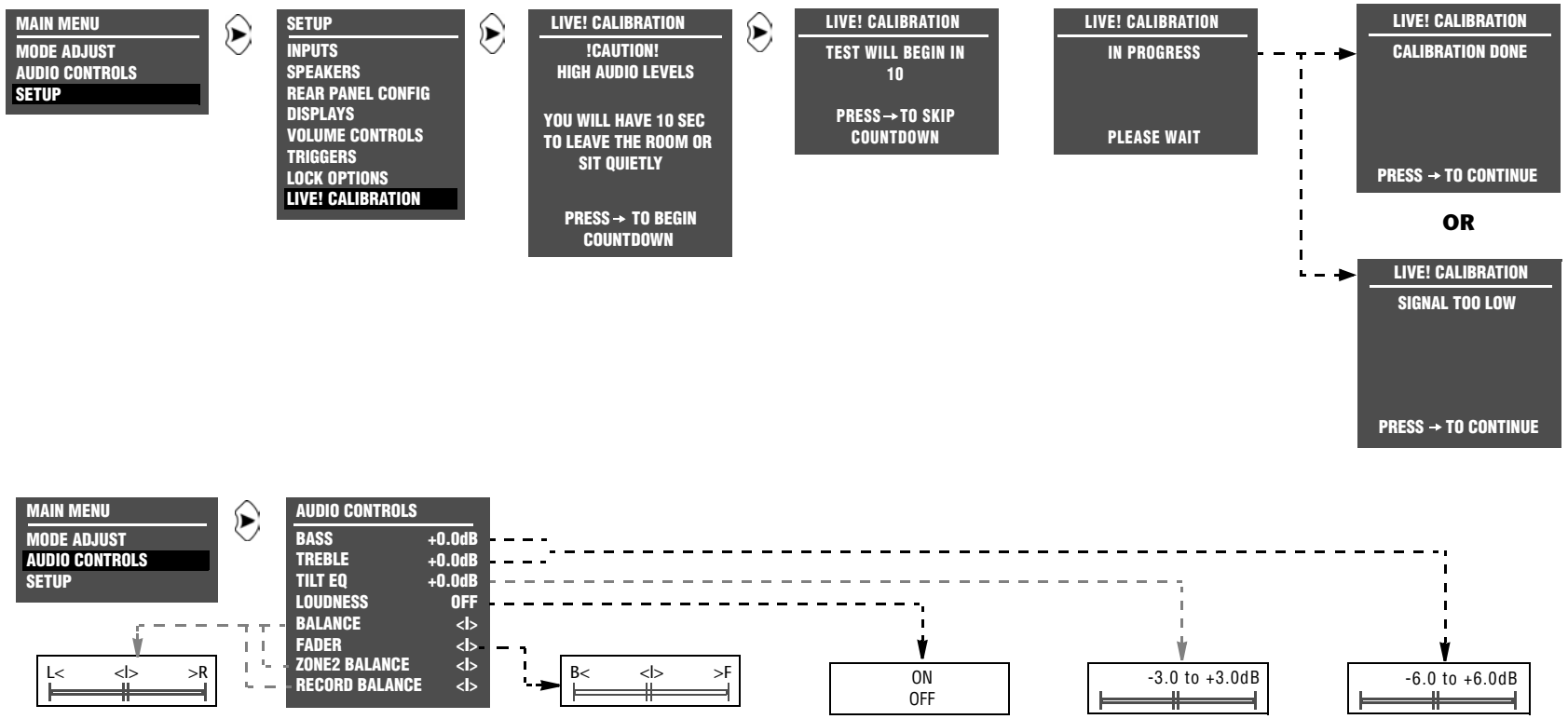
Press the ◀ arrow button to return to the AUTO SPEAKER SETUP results screen shown above (right). Then, press the ▶ arrow button to select the other calibration procedure or press the the ◀ arrow button to return to the SPEAKER SETUP menu.

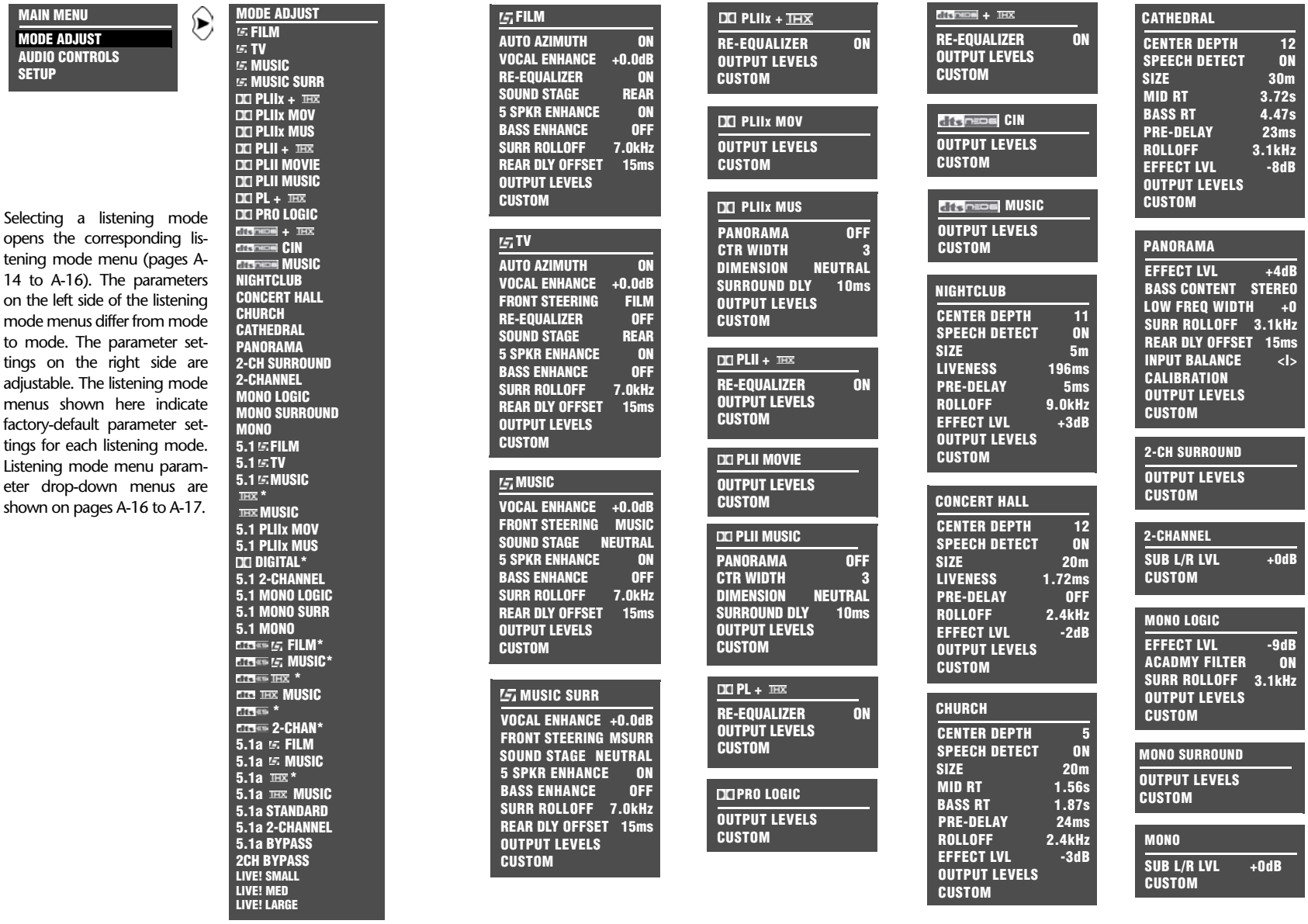
MENU TREE *(continued)*




MAIN MENU
MODE ADJUST
AUDIO CONTROLS
SETUP
SETUP
INPUTS
SPEAKERS
REAR PANEL CONFIG
DISPLAYS
VOLUME CONTROLS
TRIGGERS
LOCK OPTIONS
LIVE! CALIBRATION
SPEAKER SETUP
SET CROSSOVERS
CHECK MICROPHONES
AUTOMATIC
MANUAL
SET CROSSOVERS
BEFORE CALIBRATING
MANUAL SPEAKER SETUP
SPEAKER DISTANCES
LEVELS CALIBRATION
R
SR
RR
40Hz
60Hz
60Hz
C
60Hz
M
SUB
L
SL
RL
40Hz
40Hz
60Hz
60Hz
LEVELS CALIBRATION
INTERNAL NOISE TEST
EXTERNAL NOISE TEST
BASS PEAK LIMITER
SPEAKER DISTANCES
FRONT LEFT 0.0ft
CENTER 0.0ft
FRONT RIGHT 0.0ft
SIDE RIGHT 0.0ft
REAR RIGHT 0.0ft
REAR LEFT 0.0ft
SIDE LEFT 0.0ft
SUB (MONO) 0.0ft
SUB RIGHT N/A
LFE N/A
UNITS FEET
METERS
FEET
0.0 to 30.0ft or 12.0m
INTERNAL NOISE
!CAUTION!
HIGH AUDIO LEVELS
SPEAKER LEVEL ADJUST
FRONT LEFT +0.0dB
CENTER +0.0dB
FRONT RIGHT +0.0dB
SIDE RIGHT +0.0dB
REAR RIGHT +0.0dB
REAR LEFT +0.0dB
SIDE LEFT +0.0dB
SUB (MONO) +0.0dB
SUB RIGHT N/A
LFE N/A
-18 to 12dB
BASS PEAK LIMITER
CAL NOISE ON
L/R LIMITER ON
L/R LIMIT ADJ 100dB
LFE LIMITER' ON
LFE LIMIT ADJ 100dB
!CAUTION!
HIGH AUDIO LEVELS
75 to 120dB
ON
OFF

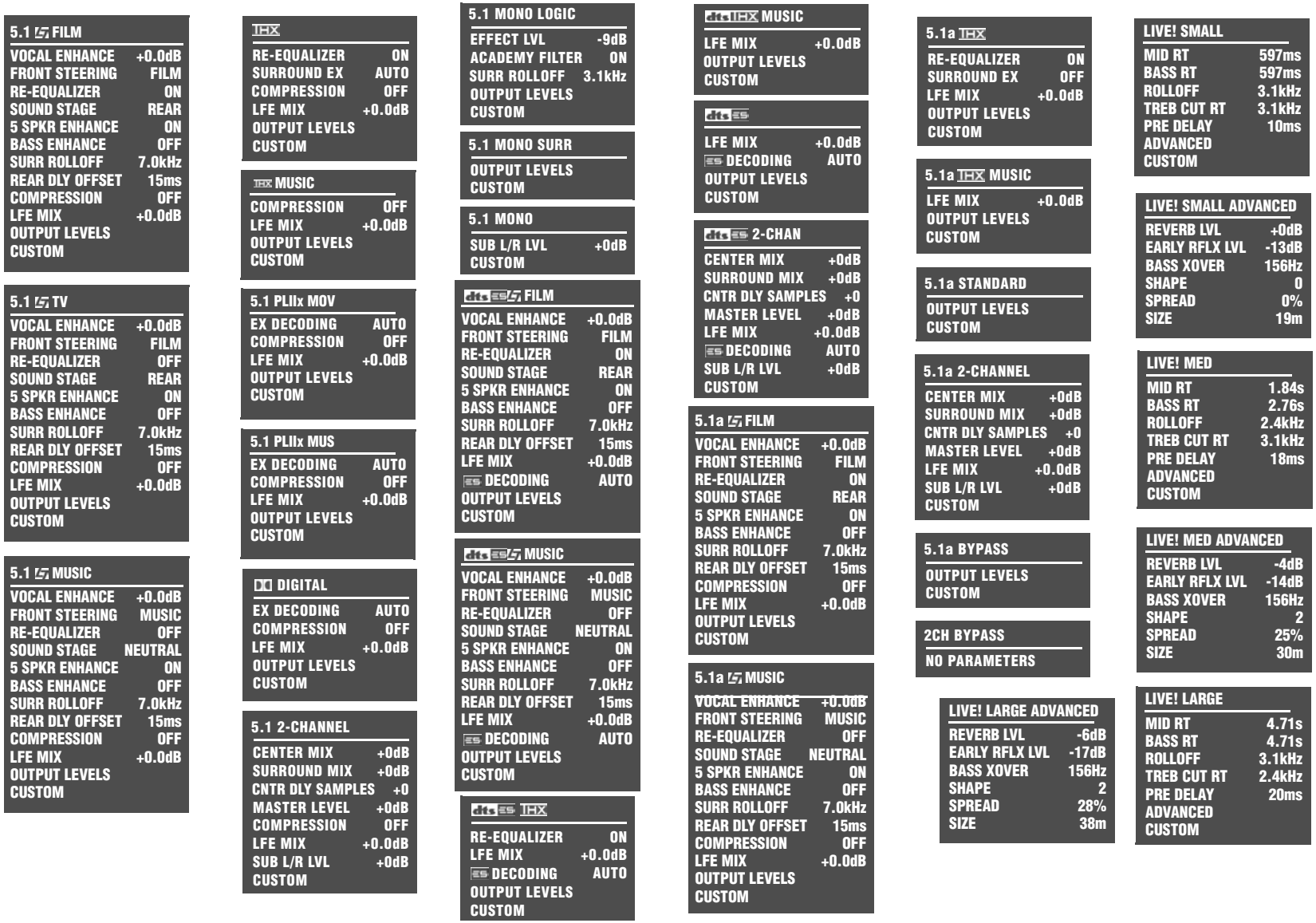
MENU TREE *(continued)*



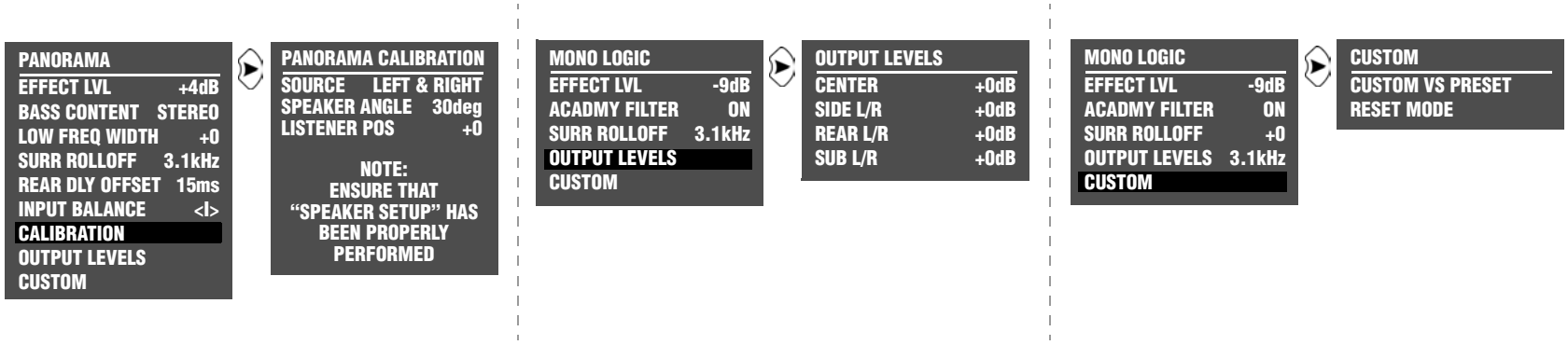


Selecting a listening mode opens the corresponding listening mode menu (pages A-14 to A-16). The parameters on the left side of the listening mode menus differ from mode to mode. The parameter settings on the right side are adjustable. The listening mode menus shown here indicate factory-default parameter settings for each listening mode. Listening mode menu parameter drop-down menus are shown on pages A-16 to A-17.

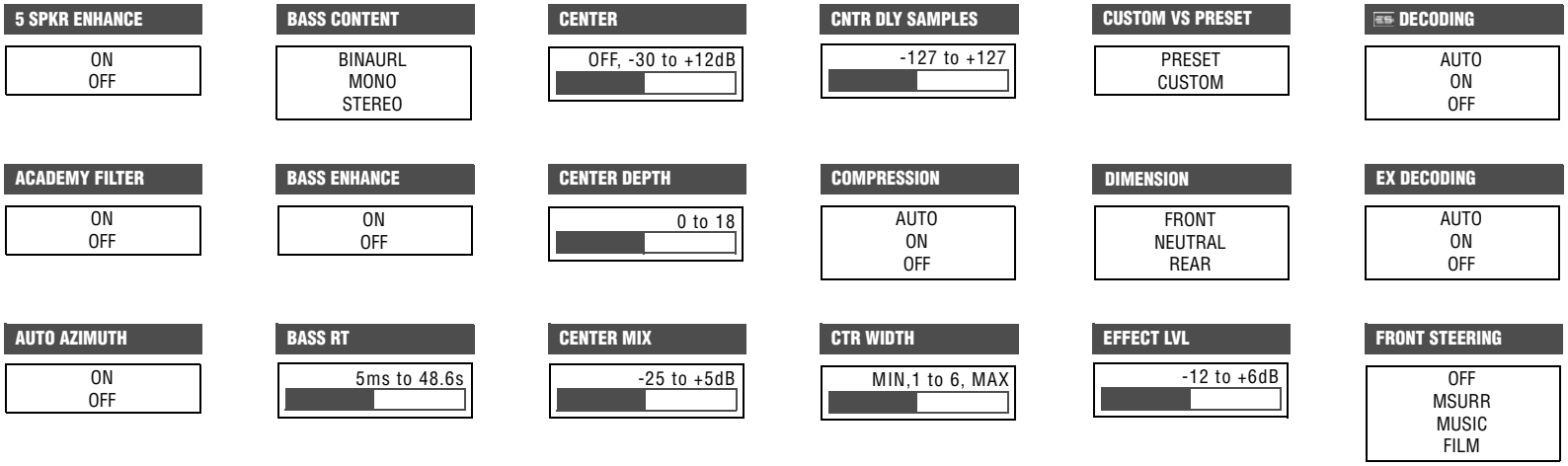
MENU TREE *(continued)*



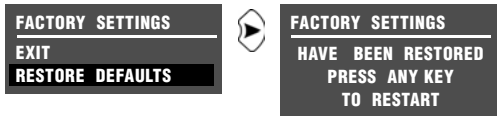
Selecting the listening mode menu CALIBRATION, OUTPUT LEVELS, or CUSTOM option opens the corresponding menu path shown below. The CALIBRATION option is available for the PANORAMA listening mode. The OUTPUT LEVELS and CUSTOM options are available for most listening modes. These menus are identical regardless of which listening mode is selected. Listening mode menu parameter drop-down menus are shown below and on the next page.



Selecting a listening mode menu parameter opens the corresponding parameter drop-down menu shown below and on the next page. These drop-down menus are identical regardless of which listening mode is selected. However, certain parameter ranges differ from listening mode to listening mode.

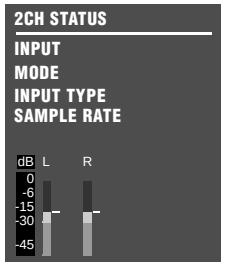


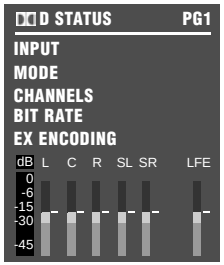
MENU TREE *(continued)*

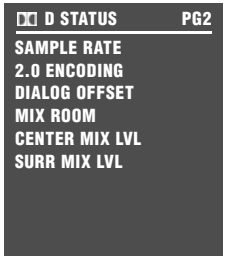


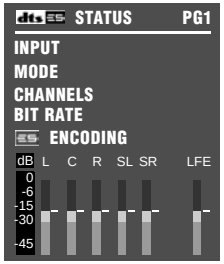
Refer to the Restoring Factory-Default Settings section that begins on page 6-4 for more information.

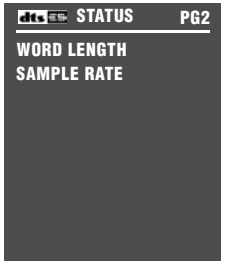
Refer to the Status Menus section that begins on page 2-21 for more information.

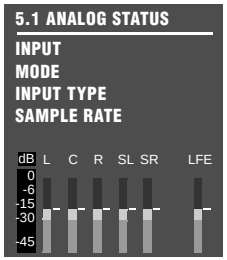


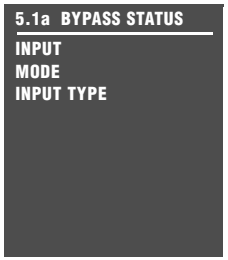


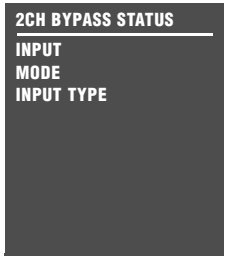


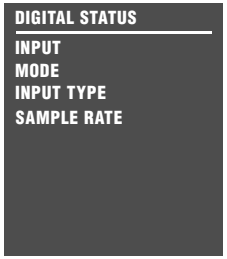


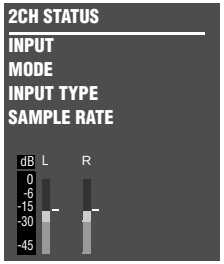


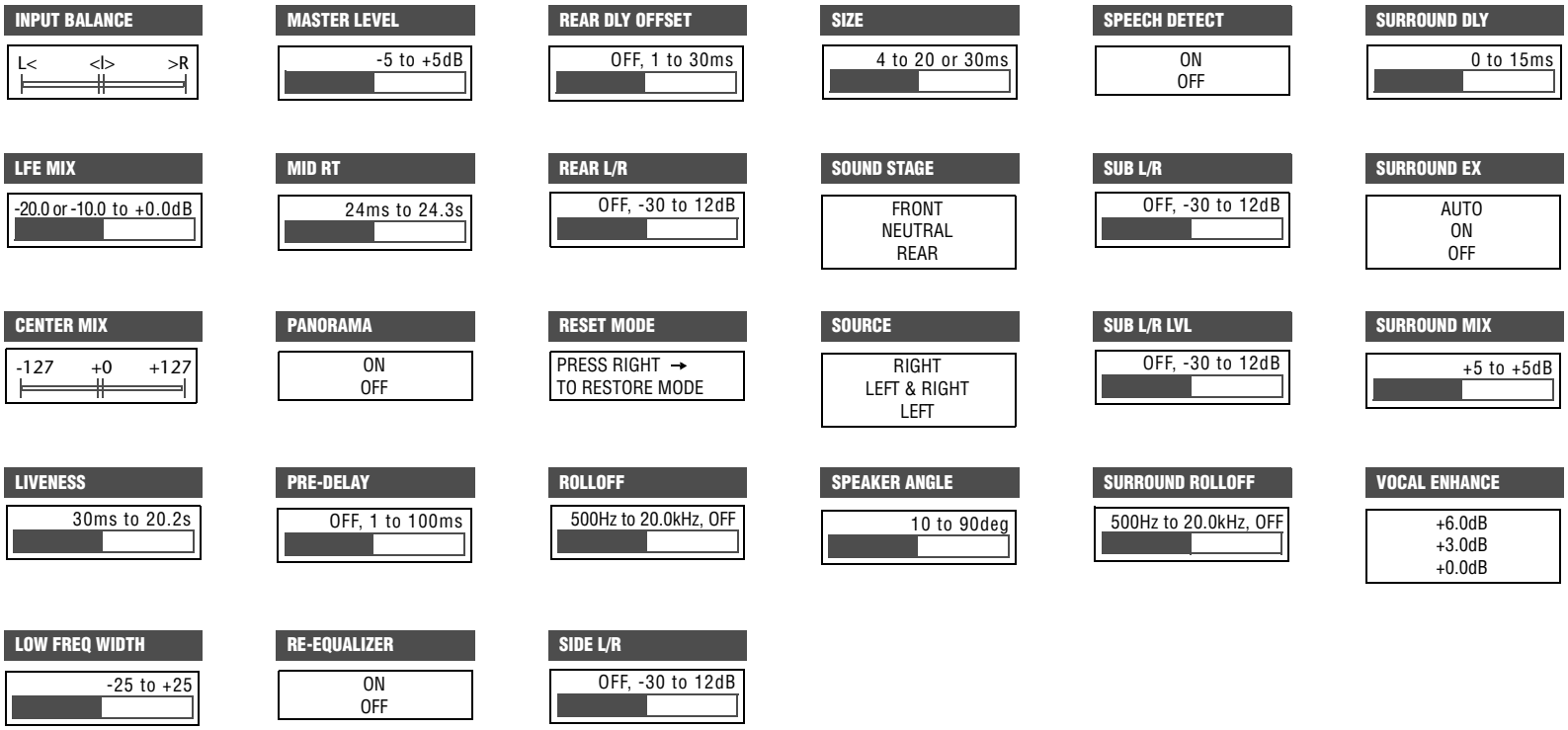











INPUT BALANCE
L< <I> >R
MASTER LEVEL
-5 to +5dB
REAR DLY OFFSET
OFF, 1 to 30ms
SIZE
4 to 20 or 30ms
SPEECH DETECT
ON
OFF
SURROUND DLY
0 to 15ms
LFE MIX
-20.0 or -10.0 to +0.0dB
MID RT
24ms to 24.3s
REAR L/R
OFF, -30 to 12dB
SOUND STAGE
FRONT
NEUTRAL
REAR
SUB L/R
OFF, -30 to 12dB
SURROUND EX
AUTO
ON
OFF
CENTER MIX
-127 +0 +127
PANORAMA
ON
OFF
RESET MODE
PRESS RIGHT →
TO RESTORE MODE
SOURCE
RIGHT
LEFT & RIGHT
LEFT
SUB L/R LVL
OFF, -30 to 12dB
SURROUND MIX
+5 to +5dB
LIVENESS
30ms to 20.2s
PRE-DELAY
OFF, 1 to 100ms
ROLLOFF
500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
SPEAKER ANGLE
10 to 90deg
SURROUND ROLLOFF
500Hz to 20.0kHz, OFF
VOCAL ENHANCE
+6.0dB
+3.0dB
+0.0dB
LOW FREQ WIDTH
-25 to +25
RE-EQUALIZER
ON
OFF
SIDE L/R
OFF, -30 to 12dB

INSTALLATION WORKSHEET

INPUT SETUP	DVD1	DVD2	LD	TV	SAT	VCR	CD	PVR	GAME	TAPE	TUNER	AUX
NAME												
DIGITAL IN												
ANALOG IN												
ANLG IN LVL												
VIDEO IN												
COMPONENT IN												
2-CH												
DD												
dts ES												
5.1a												
MIC												
MAIN ADVANCED												
INPUT SELECT												
ANALOG BYPASS												
S-VIDEO 16:9												
S-VIDEO 4:3 OSD												
COMPONENT OSD												
ZONE2 IN												
RECORD IN												
RECORD ADVANCED												
ANLG IN LVL												
DIGITAL BYPASS												
DIG OUT RATE												
RECORD												

SPEAKER SETUP	CUSTOM SETUP	THX SETUP	SPEAKER DISTANCES	LEVELS CALIBRATIONS
FRONT LEFT/RIGHT		THX 80Hz		
CENTER		THX 80Hz		
SIDE LEFT/RIGHT		THX 80Hz		
REAR LEFT/RIGHT				
SUB LEFT/RIGHT		MONO		
SUB XOVER		THX 80Hz		
LFE		OFF		
THX ULTRA2SUB				
BGC				
ASA				
UNITS				
BASS PEAK LIMITERS				
CAL NOISE				
L/R LIMITER				
L/R LIMIT ADJ				
LFE LIMITER				
LFE LIMIT ADJ				

REAR PANEL CONFIG		VOLUME CONTROL SETUP		LOCK OPTIONS	
Circle one.		MAIN PWR ON		MODES	
8 STEREO INPUTS	5 STEREO & 5.1 ANLG	MUTE LEVEL		AUDIO CONTROL	
		ZONE PWR ON		SETUP	
		REC PWR ON			
		MAX VOLUME			

INSTALLATION WORKSHEET *(continued)*

DISPLAY SETUP	
ON-SCREEN DISPLAY	
STATUS	
POSITION	
FORMAT	
BACKGROUND	
REMOTE STATE	
FRONT PANEL DISPLAY	
STATUS	
BRIGHTNESS	
A/V SYNC DELAY	
CUSTOM NAME	
EDIT CUSTOM NAME	
AUDIO CONTROLS	
BASS	
TREBLE	
TILT EQ	
LOUDNESS	
BALANCE	
FADER	
ZONE2 BALANCE	
RECORD BALANCE	

TRIGGER 1 SETUP		**TRIGGER 2 SETUP**	
Circle all parameters set to ON.		*Circle all parameters set to ON.*	
REMOTE ONLY	2-CH SURROUND	REMOTE ONLY	2-CH SURROUND
DVD1	2-CHANNEL	DVD1	2-CHANNEL
DVD2	MONO LOGIC	DVD2	MONO LOGIC
LD	MONO SURROUND	LD	MONO SURROUND
TV	MONO	TV	MONO
SAT	5.1 FILM	SAT	5.1 FILM
VCR	5.1 TV	VCR	5.1 TV
CD	5.1 MUSIC	CD	5.1 MUSIC
PVR	THX	PVR	THX
GAME	THX MUSIC	GAME	THX MUSIC
TAPE	5.1 PLIIx MOV	TAPE	5.1 PLIIx MOV
TUNER	5.1 PLIIx MUS	TUNER	5.1 PLIIx MUS
AUX	DIGITAL EX	AUX	DIGITAL EX
ZONE2 INPUTS	5.1 2-CHANNEL	ZONE2 INPUTS	5.1 2-CHANNEL
RECORD INPUTS	5.1 MONO LOGIC	RECORD INPUTS	5.1 MONO LOGIC
FILM	5.1 MONO SURR	FILM	5.1 MONO SURR
TV	5.1 MONO	TV	5.1 MONO
MUSIC	dts ES FILM	MUSIC	dts ES FILM
MUSIC SURR	dts ES MUSIC	MUSIC SURR	dts ES MUSIC
PLIIx + THX	dts ES THX	PLIIx + THX	dts ES THX
PLIIx MOV	dts ES THX MUSIC	PLIIx MOV	dts ES THX MUSIC
PLIIx MUS	dts ES	PLIIx MUS	dts ES
PLII + THX	dts ES 2-CHAN	PLII + THX	dts ES 2-CHAN
PLII MOVIE	5.1a FILM	PLII MOVIE	5.1a FILM
PLII MUSIC	5.1a MUSIC	PLII MUSIC	5.1a MUSIC
PL + THX	5.1a THX SurEX	PL + THX	5.1a THX SurEX
PRO LOGIC	5.1a THX MUSIC	PRO LOGIC	5.1a THX MUSIC
neo:6 + THX	5.1a STANDARD	neo:6 + THX	5.1a STANDARD
neo:6 CIN	5.1a 2-CHANNEL	neo:6 CIN	5.1a 2-CHANNEL
neo:6 MUSIC	5.1a BYPASS	neo:6 MUSIC	5.1a BYPASS
NIGHTCLUB	2CH BYPASS	NIGHTCLUB	2CH BYPASS
CONCERT HALL	LIVE! SMALL	CONCERT HALL	LIVE! SMALL
CHURCH	LIVE! MED	CHURCH	LIVE! MED
CATHEDRAL	LIVE! LARGE	CATHEDRAL	LIVE! LARGE
PANORAMA		PANORAMA	

Index

Numerics

2.0 ENCODING parameter, 2-25
2CH
    status menu, 2-21
2CH button, 2-17
2CH BYPASS
    status menu, 2-23
2CH BYPASS listening mode, 5-33
2-CH parameter, 3-12–3-13, 5-3, A-20
2-CH SURROUND listening mode, 5-15
2-CHANNEL listening mode, 5-15
5 SPKR ENHANCE parameter, 5-5–5-6, 5-16–5-17, 5-25, 5-28–5-29, 5-37, A-21
5 STEREO & 5.1 ANLG option, 3-60
5.1 2-CHANNEL listening mode, 5-22
5.1 ANALOG STATUS menu, 2-22
5.1 L7 FILM listening mode, 2-18, 5-4, 5-16
5.1 L7 MUSIC listening mode, 5-4, 5-17
5.1 L7 TV listening mode, 5-4, 5-17
5.1 MONO listening mode, 5-23
5.1 MONO LOGIC listening mode, 5-23
5.1 MONO SURR listening mode, 5-23
5.1a 2-CHANNEL listening mode, 5-32
5.1a BYPASS
    status menu, 2-22–2-23
5.1a L7 FILM listening mode, 5-4, 5-28
5.1a L7 MUSIC listening mode, 5-4, 5-29
5.1a parameter, 3-12, 3-14, 5-3, A-20
5.1a STANDARD listening mode, 5-31
5.1a THX listening mode, 5-4, 5-30
5.1a THX MUSIC listening mode, 5-31
5.1a THX SurEX listening mode, 5-30
5.1a THX ULTRA2 listening mode, 5-30
5.1-channel analog audio input connectors, 2-7
7/5 button, 2-17, 3-32
8 STEREO INPUTS option, 3-59, A-21

A

A/V SYNC DELAY parameter, 3-61, A-22
about the MC-12, 1-2
AC input connector, 2-7
ACADEMY FILTER parameter, 5-15, 5-23, 5-37
advanced speaker array, 3-32
ANALOB BYPASS parameter, 3-15
analog audio input connectors, 2-7
ANALOG BYPASS parameter, 3-16, A-20
ANALOG IN parameter, 3-7–3-8, A-20
anamorphic trigger signals, 3-16
ANLG IN LVL parameter, 3-7, 3-9, 3-20
arrow buttons, 2-17
ASA parameter, 3-26
assigning input connectors, 3-7
AUDIO CNTRL parameter, 3-70, A-21
AUDIO CONTROLS menu, 4-2, A-22
audio input connectors
    5.1-channel analog, 2-7
    analog, 2-7
audio input-to-output connector table, 2-7
audio output connectors
    balanced, 2-9
    main zone, 2-7
    record zone analog, 2-9
    record zone digital, 2-9
    zone 2, 2-7
AUTO AZIMUTH parameter, 5-5, 5-37
AUTO DISTANCES, 3-49
AUTO GAIN parameter, 3-9–3-10
AUTO LEVELS, 3-49
AUTO parameter, 3-9–3-10
AUTO SPEAKER SETUP screens, 3-47
Automatic Calibration, 3-35

B

BACKGROUND parameter, 3-18, 3-63–3-64, A-22
BALANCE parameter, 4-2, 4-7, A-22
balanced audio output connectors, 2-9
BASS CONTENT parameter, 5-12, 5-37
BASS ENHANCE parameter, 5-5–5-6, 5-16–5-17, 5-25, 5-28–5-29, 5-37
BASS parameter, 4-2–4-3, A-22
    frequency response graph, 4-3
    settings, 4-5
BASS PEAK LIMITERS menu, 3-52, 3-57, A-21
BASS RT parameter, 5-12, 5-37
BASS XOVER parameter, 5-37
battery installation
    remote control, 1-6
BGC parameter, 3-26, 3-32
BIT RATE parameter, 2-22, 2-25
BLUE button. See remote control, 2-16
boundary gain compensation, 3-32
BRIGHTNESS parameter, 3-65, A-22

C

CAL NOISE parameter, 3-57–3-58, A-21
Calibration
    automatic, 3-35
    manual, 3-52
    output levels, 3-33
    speaker distances, 3-33
CALIBRATION parameter, 5-12, 5-37
CATHEDRAL listening mode, 5-12
CENTER DEPTH parameter, 5-10–5-11, 5-38
CENTER L/R parameter, 3-28
CENTER MIX LVL parameter, 2-25
CENTER MIX parameter, 5-22, 5-28, 5-32–5-34, 5-38

C *(continued)*

CENTER parameter, 3-26, 3-28, 3-34, 5-35, 5-38
changing input names, 3-5
CHANNELS parameter, 2-25
CHECK MICROPHONES option, 3-35, 3-39
CHURCH listening mode, 5-12
CNTR DLY SAMPLES parameter, 5-22, 5-28, 5-32, 5-38
COMPONENT IN menu, 3-11
COMPONENT IN parameter, 3-7
COMPONENT OSD parameter, 3-15, 3-18, A-20
COMPRESSION parameter, 5-16–5-17, 5-19–5-20, 5-22, 5-38
CONCERT HALL listening mode, 5-11
crossover points, determining, 3-22–3-24, 3-28, 3-30
CROSSOVER SETUP menu, 3-25
CTR WIDTH parameter, 5-8, 5-38
CUSTOM menu, 5-35, 5-38, A-21
CUSTOM NAME parameter, 3-61
CUSTOM parameter, 5-38
CUSTOM VS PRESET option, 5-35, 5-38

D

Declaration of Conformity, A-4
DIALOG OFFSET parameter, 2-25
DIG OUT RATE parameter, 3-20, A-20
Dig Out Rate parameter, 3-21
digital audio input connectors, 2-7
DIGITAL BYPASS parameter, 3-20, A-20
DIGITAL IN parameter, 3-7
DIGITAL Status menu, 2-24
DIMENSION parameter, 5-8, 5-38
DISPLAY SETUP menu, 3-2, 3-61
DISTANCES & LEVELS option, 3-35, 3-47
DISTANCES option, 3-47
documentation conventions, 1-ii
DOLBY button, 5-4
DOLBY D parameter, 3-13
Dolby DIGITAL EX listening mode, 5-21–5-22
Dolby DIGITAL listening mode, 5-4, 5-21–5-22
Dolby DIGITAL parameter, 3-12–3-13
Dolby Digital status menu, 2-21
DOLBY PLII + THX listening mode, 5-4, 5-7–5-8
DOLBY PLII MOVIE listening mode, 5-4, 5-7
DOLBY PLII MUSIC listening mode, 5-8
DOLBY PLIIx + THX listening mode, 5-7
DOLBY PLIIx MOV listening mode, 5-7, 5-20
DOLBY PLIIx MUS listening mode, 5-8, 5-20
DOLBY PRO LOGIC listening mode, 5-9
DTS button, 5-4
DTS listening mode, 5-27
DTS Neo:6 CIN listening mode, 5-10
DTS Neo:6 FILM listening mode, 5-4
DTS Neo:6 MUSIC listening mode, 5-10, 5-14
DTS status menu, 2-22
DTS THX MUSIC listening mode, 5-27
DTS THX UL2 Cin listening mode, 5-26
DTS-ES 2-CHAN listening mode, 5-28
DTS-ES DECODING parameter, 5-24
DTS-ES L7 FILM listening mode, 3-12, 5-4, 5-24
DTS-ES L7 MUSIC listening mode, 5-4, 5-25
DTS-ES listening mode, 5-4, 5-27
DTS-ES parameter, 3-12, 3-14
DTS-ES THX listening mode, 5-4, 5-26

E

EARLY RFLX LVL parameter, 5-39
EDIT CUSTOM NAME parameter, 3-61–3-62, A-22
EDIT INPUT NAME menu, 3-5
EFFECT LVL parameter, 5-10–5-12, 5-15, 5-23, 5-39
ES DECODING parameter, 5-24, 5-26–5-28, 5-38–5-40, 5-42
ES ENCODING parameter, 2-21–2-22, 2-25
EX DECODING parameter, 5-20–5-22, 5-39
EX ENCODING parameter, 2-25
External Noise Test, 3-52

F

factory-default settings, restoring, 6-4
FADER parameter, 4-2, A-22
FORMAT parameter, 3-63–3-64, A-22
FP button. See remote control, 2-16
FRONT L/R parameter, 3-26–3-28, 3-30, 3-34
front panel
  display, 2-3
  MC-12, 2-2
  MC-12 Balanced, 2-4
  overview, 2-2, 2-4
FRONT PANEL DISPLAY menu, 3-65
FRONT PANEL DISPLAY parameter, 3-61
FRONT RIGHT parameter, 3-34
FRONT STEERING parameter, 5-5–5-6, 5-40

H

highlights, MC-12, 1-4
high-pass filter, 3-23
horizontal bar graphs, 2-12

I

INPUT BALANCE parameter, 5-12, 5-40
input connectors
  digital audio, 2-7
  IR, 2-10
  microphone, 2-10
  video, 2-9
INPUT NAME menu, 3-5
INPUT parameter, 2-21, 2-23–2-24, 2-26
INPUT SELECT parameter, 3-15–3-17, A-20
input selection buttons, 2-5
  Record Zone, 2-5
  Zone 2, 2-5
INPUT SETUP menu, 3-2, 3-4, A-20
INPUT TYPE parameter, 2-21–2-24, 2-26
INPUTS
  changing names, 3-5
  configuring, 3-15
  Main Zone, 2-5, 3-2
  Record Zone, 3-2
installation considerations, 1-5

I *(continued)*

installation worksheet, A-20
Internal Noise Test, 3-52
IR input connector, 2-10
IR receiver, 2-3

L

L/R LIMIT ADJ parameter, 3-57–3-58, A-21
L/R LIMITER parameter, 3-57–3-58, A-21
L7 button, 5-4
L7 FILM listening mode, 2-18, 3-12, 5-5
L7 MUSIC listening mode, 5-4, 5-6
L7 MUSIC SURR listening mode, 5-6
L7 TV listening mode, 5-4–5-5
LEDs, IR receiver, 2-3
level meters, 3-10
LEVELS CALIBRATION, A-21
LEVELS CALIBRATION menu, 3-54
LEVELS option, 3-35
Levels option, 3-47
LFE LIMIT ADJ parameter, 3-57, 3-59
LFE LIMITER parameter, 3-57–3-58
LFE MIX parameter, 5-16–5-17, 5-19–5-20, 5-22, 5-25–5-32, 5-40
LFE parameter, 3-26, 3-30, 3-34, 5-35
LISTENER POS parameter, 5-13, 5-40
listening mode descriptions, 5-5
listening mode parameter descriptions, 5-37
LISTENING MODES
  Activating, 5-2
  Descriptions, 5-5
  parameter descriptions, 5-37
  Preferred, 5-3
listening modes, preferred, 3-12
LIVE! CALIBRATION menu, 3-3
LIVE! mode, 5-33
LIVE! Status Menu, 2-24
LIVENESS parameter, 5-11, 5-41
LOCK OPTIONS menu, 3-3, A-21
LOUDNESS parameter, 4-2, 4-6
LOW FREQ WIDTH parameter, 5-12, 5-41
low-pass filter, 3-23

M

MAIN ADV menu, 3-15
MAIN ADVANCED parameter, 3-15
MAIN menu, 2-11
MAIN PWR ON parameter, 3-66, A-21
Main Zone, 2-19
main zone audio output connectors, 2-7
maintenance, 6-3
manual audio adjustments, 3-10
manual calibration, 3-52
MANUAL parameter, 3-9–3-10
MANUAL SPEAKER SETUP menu, 3-52
MASTER LEVEL parameter, 5-22, 5-28, 5-32, 5-41
MAX VOLUME parameter, 3-67
MC-12
  about, 1-2
  highlights, 1-4
  product registration, 1-5
menu arrow buttons, 2-11
MENU button, 2-17
menu item selection, 2-11
menu navigation, 2-11
menu options, 2-12
  selecting, 2-12
menu parameters, 2-12
Menu tree, A-5
MIC parameter, 3-14
MICROPHONE CHECK option, 3-35
microphone input connectors, 2-10
microphone placement, 3-41
MID RT parameter, 5-12, 5-41
MIX ROOM parameter, 2-21, 2-26
MODE ADJUST menu, 5-2
mode buttons, 2-5, 2-16, 5-4
MODE parameter, 2-22–2-24, 2-26
MODES parameter, 3-70, A-21
MONO listening mode, 5-16
MONO LOGIC listening mode, 5-15
MONO SUB parameter, 3-34
MONO SURROUND listening mode, 5-16
Music button, 2-18, 5-4
Mute button, 2-4, 2-16
MUTE LEVEL parameter, 3-66, A-21
MUTE ON message, 2-4

N

NAME parameter, 3-5
NIGHTCLUB listening mode, 5-10

O

OFF buttons, 2-5
ON-SCREEN DISPLAY menu, 3-63, A-22
OSD button. See remote control, 2-16
output connectors
  audio, 2-7
  trigger, 2-10
Output Level Parameters, 3-33
OUTPUT LEVELS menu, 5-35
Output levels, calibrating
  automatic, 3-35
  Bass Peak Limiters, 3-57
  manual, 3-54
  parameters, 3-33

P

PANORAMA
  calibration, 5-13
Panorama listening mode, 5-12
PANORAMA parameter, 5-8, 5-41
parameter drop-down menus, 2-12
parameters
  listening mode menu, 5-37
  program operation, 3-68
  selecting, 2-12
  STATUS menu, 2-25
parameters, preferred listening mode selection, 3-12

P *(continued)*

PLIIx MOV listening mode, 5-20
PLIIx MUS listening mode, 5-20
POSITION parameter, 3-63
power switch, 2-7
PRE-DELAY parameter, 5-10, 5-12, 5-41
program operation parameters, 3-68–3-69

R

REAR DLY OFFSET parameter, 5-5–5-6, 5-12, 5-16–5-17, 5-25, 5-28–5-29, 5-42
REAR L/R parameter, 3-26, 3-28–3-29, 3-36, 5-35, 5-42
REAR LEFT parameter, 3-34
rear panel
    MC-12, 2-6
    MC-12 Balanced, 2-8
    overview, 2-6
REAR PANEL CONFIG menu, 3-2
REAR RIGHT parameter, 3-34
REC BALANCE parameter, 4-2
REC PWR ON parameter, 3-66
RECORD ADVANCED menu, 3-20, A-20
RECORD ADVANCED parameter, 3-15
RECORD BALANCE parameter, 4-7, A-22
RECORD IN parameter, 3-15, 3-18–3-19, A-20
RECORD parameter, 3-20, A-20
Record parameter, 3-21
Record Zone, 2-19
record zone audio output connectors, 2-9
record zone video output connectors, 2-9
RE-EQUALIZER parameter, 5-5, 5-7–5-9, 5-16–5-17, 5-19, 5-25–5-26, 5-28–5-30, 5-42
remote control
    arrow buttons, 2-11
    battery installation, 1-6
    BLUE button, 2-16
    command bank activation, 2-13
    command matrix, 2-14
    FP button, 2-16
    input selection buttons, 2-14
    light button, 2-14
    Main Zone, 2-14
    menu button, 2-11
    operation considerations, 2-10
    OSD button, 2-16
    overview, 2-10
    Record Zone, 2-14
    Shift, 2-14
    Zone 2, 2-14
REMOTE ONLY parameter, 3-68–3-69
REMOTE STATE parameter, 3-63–3-64, A-22
removable access panel, 2-10
RESET MODE parameter, 5-36, 5-42
RESTORE DEFAULT NAME menu, 3-6–3-7
restoring factory-default settings, 6-4
REVERB LVL parameter, 5-42
ROLLOFF parameter, 5-11, 5-42
routine maintenance, 6-3
RS-232 connectors, 2-9

S

S:VIDEO 16:9 parameter, 3-15
S:VIDEO OSD 4:3 parameter, 3-15
safety instructions, ii, v
SAMPLE RATE parameter, 2-21–2-22, 2-24, 2-26
SET DISTANCES display, 3-50
SET LEVELS display, 3-50
SETTING DISTANCES screen, 3-48
SETTING LEVELS screen, 3-48
SETUP menu, 2-12, 3-2
SETUP parameter, 3-70
SHAPE parameter, 5-42
SIDE L/R parameter, 3-26, 3-28, 5-35, 5-42
SIDE LEFT parameter, 3-34
SIDE RIGHT parameter, 3-34
SIZE parameter, 5-10–5-11, 5-42
SOUND STAGE parameter, 5-5–5-6, 5-43
SOURCE parameter, 5-13, 5-43
SPEAKER ANGLE parameter, 5-13, 5-43
speaker calibration parameters, 3-33
SPEAKER SETUP menu, 3-2
SPEECH DETECT parameter, 5-10–5-11, 5-43
SPREAD parameter, 5-43
standby button, 2-3
STAT button, 2-17
STATUS menu descriptions, 2-21
STATUS menu Level Meters, 2-26
STATUS menu parameters, 2-25
STATUS parameter, 3-63, 3-65
SUB L/R LVL parameter, 5-32
SUB L/R parameter, 3-26
SUB LEVEL parameter, 5-15–5-16, 5-22–5-23, 5-28, 5-43
SUB parameter, 5-35
SUB RIGHT parameter, 3-34
SUB XOVER parameter, 3-26, 3-28, 3-30
SUBWOOFER parameter, 3-30
SUBWOOFERS L/R parameter, 3-28
SURR MIX LVL parameter, 2-26
SURR ROLLOFF parameter, 5-5–5-6, 5-12, 5-15, 5-23, 5-43
SURROUND DLY parameter, 5-8, 5-44
SURROUND EX parameter, 5-19, 5-30, 5-44
SURROUND MIX parameter, 5-22, 5-28, 5-32, 5-44
S-VIDEO 16
    9 parameter, 3-16

T

THX button, 5-4
THX listening mode, 5-18
THX SPEAKER SETUP screen, 3-25
THX SurEX listening mode, 5-18
THX ULTRA2 listening mode, 5-18, 5-29–5-30
THX ULTRA2 SUB parameter, 3-26, 3-31
TILT EQ parameter, 4-2, 4-5
TREBLE parameter, 4-2, 4-4
trigger output connectors, 2-10
TRIGGER SETUP menu, 3-2
troubleshooting, 6-2
TV button, 5-4
Two-line Status
    Main Zone, 2-19

T *(continued)*

Record Zone, 2-20
Zone 2, 2-19

U

UNITS parameter, 3-34
USE LAST setting, 3-13

V

VIDEO IN menu, 3-11
video input connectors
component BNC, 2-9
component RCA, 2-9
composite, 2-9
S-video, 2-9
video output connectors, 2-9
component, 2-9
composite, 2-9
record zone, 2-9
S-video, 2-9
VOCAL ENHANCE parameter, 5-5–5-6, 5-16–5-17, 5-25, 5-28–5-29, 5-45
VOLUME CONTROL SETUP menu, 3-2
volume knob, 2-3

W

WORD LENGTH parameter, 2-26

Z

zone 2 audio output connectors, 2-7
ZONE PWR ON parameter, 3-66
ZONE2 BALANCE parameter, 4-2, 4-7
ZONE2 IN parameter, 3-15, 3-18–3-19
Zones, About, 2-19

LIMITED WARRANTY

Harman Specialty Group offers the following warranty on this product:

What is the Duration of this Warranty?

This warranty will remain in effect for three (3) years from the original date of purchase.

Who is Covered?

This warranty may be enforced by the original purchaser and subsequent owners during the warranty period, provided the original dated sales receipt or other proof of warranty coverage is presented at time of service.

What is Covered?

This warranty covers all defects in material and workmanship on this product, except as specified below. The following are not covered:

1. Damage resulting from
   - A. Accident, misuse, abuse, or neglect.
   - B. Failure to follow instructions contained in the user guide.
   - C. Repair or attempted repair unauthorized by Harman Specialty Group.
   - D. Failure to perform recommended periodic maintenance.
2. Causes other than product defects, including lack of skill, competence, or experience on the part of the owner.
3. Damage occurring during any shipment of this product. Claims for shipping damages must be made with the carrier.
4. Damage to a unit that has been altered, or on which the serial number has been defaced, modified, or removed.

What Expenses will Harman Specialty Group Assume?

Harman Specialty Group will pay all labor and material expenses for covered items. Payment of shipping charges is discussed in the next section of the warranty.

How is Service Obtained?

When this product needs service, write, telephone, or fax Harman Specialty Group to request information about where the unit should be taken or sent. When making a written request, please include your name, complete address, and daytime telephone number; the product model and serial numbers; and a description of the problem. Do not return the unit to Harman Specialty Group without prior authorization.

When Shipping a Product for Service . . .

1. Pay any initial shipping charges, which are the responsibility of the owner. If necessary repairs are covered by this warranty, Harman Specialty Group will pay return shipping charges to any destination in the United States using the carrier of our choice.
2. Pack the unit securely. Package insurance is strongly recommended.
3. Include a copy of the original dated sales receipt. (A copy of the original dated sales receipt must be presented whenever warranty service is required.)
4. Do not include accessories such as power cords or user guides unless instructed to do so.

What are the Limitations of Implied Warranties?

Any implied warranties, including warranties of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose, are limited in duration to the length of this warranty.

What Certain Damages are Excluded?

Harman Specialty Group's liability for a defective product is limited to repair or replacement of that product, at our option. Harman Specialty Group shall not be liable for damages based on inconvenience; loss of use of the product; loss of time; interrupted operation; commercial loss; or any other damages, whether incidental, consequential, or otherwise.

How do State Laws Relate to this Warranty?

Some states do not allow limitations on the duration of implied warranties and/or the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages. As such, the above limitations may not apply.

This warranty is not enforceable outside of North America. This warranty provides specific legal rights. Additional rights may be provided by some states.

lexicon
A Harman International Company

Harman Specialty Group
3 Oak Park
Bedford, MA 01730-1413
USA

Tel 781-280-0300
Fax 781-280-0490
www.lexicon.com

Customer Service
Tel 781-280-0300
Fax 781-280-0495 (Sales)
Fax 781-280-0499 (Service)

lexicon
A Harman International Company

PRODUCT REGISTRATION

Please register this product within 15 days of purchase. To do so, complete and return this card or register online at www.lexicon.com. Retain the sales receipt for proof of coverage.

⬭ Mr. ⬭ Mrs. ⬭ Ms. ⬭ Miss
⬭ Single ⬭ Married ⬭ Divorced ⬭ Widowed

First Name Last Name
Company Title
Mailing Address
City State Zip
Telephone Number Fax Number
Email Address
Product Model Purchase Date
Version Serial Number
Where did you purchase this product?

Age	Education	Household Income
⬭ Under 18	⬭ High School	⬭ Under $20,000
⬭ 18-24	⬭ College	⬭ $20,000 to $34,999
⬭ 25-34	⬭ Graduate School	⬭ $35,000 to $49,000
⬭ 35-49	⬭ Certificate:	⬭ $50,000 to $74,999
⬭ 50-64		⬭ $75,000 to $99,000
⬭ 65+		⬭ $100,000+

How did you learn about this product? Choose one:

⬭ Friend	⬭ Store salesperson	⬭ Advertisement
⬭ Colleague	⬭ Store display	⬭ Magazine Article
⬭ Teacher	⬭ Received as a gift	⬭ Own other Lexicon products

Which of the following were most important in the selection of this product?

⬭ Sound ⬭ Quality ⬭ Value for price ⬭ Durability
⬭ Features ⬭ Brandname ⬭ Other:

What are your three favorite magazines?

1. 2. 3.

What are your three favorite websites?

1. 2. 3.

What features would you like to see added to this product in the future?

MC-12 05/05

PRODUCT REGISTRATION
HARMAN SPECIALTY GROUP
3 OAK PARK
BEDFORD MA 01730-9863

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL
FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 67 BEDFORD MA

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

Lexicon

A Harman International Company

3 Oak Park Drive
Bedford, MA 01730-1413 USA
Tel 781-280-0300
Fax 781-280-0490
www.harmanspecialtygroup.com

Customer Service
Telephone: 781-280-0300
Sales Fax: 781-280-0495
Service Fax: 781-280-0499

Product Shipments
16 Progress Road
Billerica, MA 01821-5730 USA

Part No. 070-14773 | Rev 4 | 05/05